

5th
PRIM.

STONE

2026



First Term



Table of Contents

Module 1

Introduction

Let's Remember

Check and Go!	9
Part 1: Previous Years Revision on Grammar	
The Present Simple Tense	11
The Present Continuous Tense	13
Part 2: Skills	
1. Reading Skills	
A) Wh- Words	15
B) How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions	17
2. Writing Skills	
A) Parts of Speech	18
B) Sentence Formation	20
C) Punctuation Marks	21
D) Tips for Writing a Paragraph	23

Unit 1

Food, Nature, and Culture

Lesson 1	26
Lesson 2	31
Lesson 3	37
Lessons 4 and 5	43
Unit 1 Review	49
Check Your Vocabulary	50
Writing Time	51
Student's Book Corner	52
Test Yourself 1	53
Test Yourself 2	55
Al-Azhar Corner	57

Module 2

Unit 2

My Healthy Body

Lesson 1	59
Lesson 2	65
Lesson 3	73
Lessons 4 and 5	79
Unit 2 Review	86
Check Your Vocabulary	87
Writing Time	88
Student's Book Corner	89
Test Yourself 1	90
Test Yourself 2	92
Al-Azhar Corner	94
Al-Adwaa Revision – October	95
Al-Adwaa Tests – October	98

Unit 3

When Nature Changes

Lesson 1	103
Lesson 2	108
Lesson 3	117
Lessons 4 and 5	123
Unit 3 Review	128
Check Your Vocabulary	129
Writing Time	130
Student's Book Corner	131
Test Yourself 1	132
Test Yourself 2	134
Al-Azhar Corner	136



Unit 4 My Community

Lesson 1	138
Lesson 2	143
Lesson 3	151
Lessons 4 and 5	155

Unit 4 Review	159
Check Your Vocabulary	160
Writing Time	161
Student's Book Corner	162
Test Yourself 1	163
Test Yourself 2	165
Al-Azhar Corner	167
Al-Adwaa Revision – November	168
Al-Adwaa Tests – November	171

Unit 6 The Talking Earth (Story)

Vocabulary	212
Story Elements	213
Story	214
Practice – Story	219

Module 3

Unit 5 Our World, Our Resources

Lesson 1	176
Lesson 2	182
Lesson 3	190
Lessons 4 and 5	196

Unit 5 Review	201
Check Your Vocabulary	202
Writing Time	203
Student's Book Corner	204
Test Yourself 1	205
Test Yourself 2	207
Al-Azhar Corner	209

Final Revision & Tests

Revision on Units 1 & 2	222
Revision on Units 3 & 4	230
Revision on Unit 5	237
Story Corner	241
Conjugation of Verbs	243
Final Tests	245
Al-Azhar Tests	275

Tapescripts	285
Writing Answers	289
Dictation	292



Let's Remember

هذا الجزء تأسيسي يهدف إلى تنمية مهارات القراءة والكتابة لدى الطالب. 🐦



- Check and Go!

Part 1

- Previous Years Revision on Grammar

Part 2

- Skills



Check and Go!

30

هذا الجزء مخصص لقياس مستوى الطالب قبل البدء في العام الدراسي الجديد وتحديد أهم النقاط التي يحتاج إلى تقويتها.



Listening

1 Listen and complete the dialog:

4

shop – ice cream – hot – Me

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع إلى آخر الكتاب.

Hana: It is very (1)..... today.

Nada: Yes, I want (2).....

Hana: (3)....., too!

Nada: Let's go to the (4).....



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer:

4

- The camel lives in the (river – desert – mountain – sea).
- My mother always cooks food in the (living room – balcony – bathroom – kitchen).
- The (plumber – mechanic – electrician – vet) fixes pipes and faucets.
- A: What is Nada (reading – eating – playing – doing)? B: Pizza.

3 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct one:

4

- | | | | | | |
|---|--------|-----------|---------|----------|-------|
| 1 | Monday | yesterday | Tuesday | Friday | ..... |
| 2 | chair | cupboard | table | hospital | ..... |
| 3 | hungry | sad | smile | angry | ..... |
| 4 | boy | eye | nose | arm | ..... |

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

3

Nile – quiet – teacher – village

My uncle lives in a big village. It is bigger than my (1)..... . His house is near the (2)..... , so he can see the river all day. He is a (3)..... . He works in a school. He likes his life because his village is quiet and beautiful.

9

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

3

Hello! My name is Omar. I am in grade four. I live in a big city with my family. The city has a lot of pretty, bright lights. There is smoke everywhere because of cars. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow there. There aren't many cars or noise. We love the country more than the city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar is in grade
a) 2 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6
- 2 The underlined word "there" refers to the
a) city b) smoke c) country d) family

B Answer the following question:

- 3 Where does Omar live?



Writing

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 What are they (eat)?
- 2 A: (When) is Salma? B: She is in the library.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

- 1 work – father – Where – your – does?

.....

- 2 huge – very – crocodiles – are – The.

.....

- 3 having – party – I'm – birthday – a.

.....

8 Write a paragraph about (Your favorite food):

5

.....

.....

.....

PART 1

Previous Years Revision on Grammar

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الحقائق والعادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها بشكل متكرر. ✓

Form	I/ You/ We/ They	He/ She/ It
Affirmative form: صيغة الإثبات	Subj. + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. I listen to music at night.</i>	Subj. + (inf.) + s, es, ies ... <i>e.g. She writes her homework at 7 pm.</i>
Negative form: صيغة النفي	Subj. + don't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. We don't like chocolate cake.</i>	Subj. + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. Adam doesn't read a story every week.</i>
Yes/ No question: السؤال بـ (هل)	Do + subj. + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. Do you work at the weekends?</i>	Does + subj. + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. Does Reem listen to music?</i>
Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام	Wh-word + do + subj. + (inf.) ... <i>e.g. What sports do the children play?</i>	Wh-word + does + subj. + (inf.) ... <i>e.g. When does Moaz go to bed?</i>

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

0%

never
أبداً

10%

rarely
نادراً

50%

sometimes
أحياناً

70%

often
غالباً

90%

usually
عادة

100%

always
دائماً

Verb to (be) in the present simple tense الفعل (يكون) في زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative form	I + (am)	Negative form	I + (am not) ...
	He/ She / It + (is) ...		He/ She / It + (isn't) ...
	We/ They/ You + (are) ...		We/ They/ You + (aren't) ...
Yes/ No question:	Is/ Are + subject (فاعل) ... ?	<i>e.g. A: Are they thirsty? B: Yes, they are.</i> <i>A: Is she a doctor? B: No, she isn't.</i>	

PRACTICE

The Present Simple Tense

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Sami (drinks – drink – drinking – to drink) milk every night.
- 2 They usually (get – gets – to get – getting) up early.
- 3 I (play – to play – plays – playing) tennis twice a week.
- 4 (Do – Does – Are – Is) he study English in the evening?
- 5 Anas (to work – working – works – work) in a library.
- 6 She (talks – to talk – talking – talk) to her friend every day.
- 7 What (do – does – is – was) Sara do on the weekends?
- 8 She doesn't (ate – eat – eats – eating) breakfast at home.
- 9 Ahmed never (go – to go – going – goes) shopping on Thursdays.
- 10 Karma (study – studies – to study – studying) science every day.
- 11 He (don't – isn't – aren't – doesn't) go to school on foot.
- 12 How does Ahmed (help – helps – helping – helped) his friends?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (playing) football every day.
- 2 Ali (write) a short story every month.
- 3 She (not speaks) Arabic.
- 4 A: Does Reem listen to music? B: Yes, she (do).
- 5 She doesn't (plays) the guitar.
- 6 Do you (going) to the club at the weekend?
- 7 I (not) work at night.
- 8 (Does) Hana and Yara watch TV every day?
- 9 She never (tidy) her room in the morning.
- 10 What do the children (playing) after school?
- 11 Dina (have) three children.
- 12 The sun (rise) in the east.
- 13 My parents (working) in a big company.

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I	am	→	I'm	(inf.) + ing ...
He/ She/ It	is	→	He's/ She's/ It's	
We / They / You	are	→	We're/ They're/ You're	

e.g. I **am** visiting the museum. e.g. He **is** eating a cupcake. e.g. They **are** listening to music.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

I	am not	→	I'm not	(inf.) + ing ...
He/ She/ It	is not (isn't)	→	He isn't/ She isn't/ It isn't	
We / They / You	are not (aren't)	→	We aren't/ They aren't/ You aren't	

e.g. Salah **isn't** singing a song. e.g. The children **aren't** drawing pictures.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Am	I	(inf.) + ing ... ?
Is	he/ she/ it	
Are	we/ they/ you	

e.g. A: **Is** Noha **eating** lunch?

B: **Yes**, she **is**.

e.g. A: **Are** you **riding** a bike?

B: **No**, we **aren't**.

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh-word	am / is / are	subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) + ing ... ?
---------	---------------	------------------	--------------------

e.g. A: What **is** Kareem **doing**?

B: He **is** **doing** his homework.

e.g. A: Where **are** the children **going**?

B: They **are** **going** to school.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

now الآن / at the moment – at the present في هذه اللحظة Look! انظر Listen! استمع

this + (time) (وقت) / still / ما زال today اليوم

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Sama (**is** – are – am – has) not sleeping now.
- 2 Look! She (**wear** – wears – **is wearing** – wearing) a new dress.
- 3 They (**play** – plays – **are playing** – played) football in the park at the moment.
- 4 Listen! My father (**talk** – talks – **is talking** – talking) on the phone.
- 5 Hurry up! The school bus (**waited** – waiting – **is waiting** – waits) for you.
- 6 Listen! The baby (**cry** – cries – **is crying** – crying).
- 7 We are (**ride** – riding – rides – rode) our bikes to school now.
- 8 (**Am** – Is – Are – Does) she reading a story now?
- 9 (**Am** – Is – Are – Do) they cleaning the room at the moment?
- 10 Listen! Mom (**called** – **is calling** – call – calls).
- 11 What (**am** – is – are – has) Mona doing at the present?
- 12 Look! It (**rains** – rained – **is raining** – rain) heavily.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (**be talk**) about pollution today.
- 2 They (**play**) football in the park at the moment.
- 3 Look! The birds (**flies**) in the sky.
- 4 I (**not watch**) a movie at the moment.
- 5 Listen! The doorbell is (**rings**).
- 6 (**Is**) they watching TV now?
- 7 What (**they are**) doing at the moment?
- 8 It is (**rain**) outside.
- 9 She (**cook**) dinner at the present.
- 10 Look! Mom is (**writes**) a short story.
- 11 Nada (**not write**) any emails today.
- 12 No, she (**doesn't**) listening to music now.
- 13 (**Is**) you doing your homework?

1. Reading Skills



Wh- Words

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? (ما / ماذا ...؟ (للسؤال عن ماهية الشيء))

A: **What** is this?

B: This is **a book**.

When ...? (متى ...؟ (للسؤال عن الوقت))

A: **When** do you get up?

B: I get up **at six in the morning**.

Whose ...? (لمن ...؟ (للسؤال عن الملكية))

A: **Whose** car is this?

B: This is **my** car. / This car is **mine**.

How ...? (كيف ...؟ (للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات))

A: **How** do you go to school?

B: I go to school **by bike**.

How old ...? (كم العمر ...؟ (للسؤال عن العمر))

A: **How old** are you?

B: I'm **six years old**.

Where ...? (أين ...؟ (للسؤال عن المكان))

A: **Where** are you?

B: We are **at school**.

Who ...? (من ...؟ (للسؤال عن العاقل))

A: **Who** is he?

B: He is **my friend Ahmed**.

Which ...? (أى ...؟ (للسؤال عن الاختيار))

A: **Which** present do you want?

B: I want the **blue present**.

How many ...? (كم العدد ...؟ (للسؤال عن العدد))

A: **How many** pens are there?

B: There are **six** pens.

How long ...?

(كم الطول ...؟ (للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية/الأطوال الأفقية))

A: **How long** is this table?

B: It is **1 meter** long.

A: **How long** do you practice tennis?

B: I practice tennis **for two hours**.

How much ...?

كم...؟ الثمن / الكمية

1- A: **How much** are the shoes?B: They are **one hundred pounds**.2- A: **How much** water do you drink?B: I drink **5 glasses** of water a day.

Why ...?

(لماذا) ...؟ للسؤال عن السبب

A: **Why** do you go to school?B: I go to school **to learn**.**✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:**

- ① A: (**What** – **Where**) is she going? B: She is going to school.
- ② A: (**Whose** – **Who**) bag is this? B: It's her bag.
- ③ A: (**What** – **Who**) is Ali? B: He is my brother.
- ④ A: (**When** – **Where**) do you sleep? B: I sleep at 9 o'clock.
- ⑤ A: (**Who** – **How**) many apples are there in the box? B: There are three apples.
- ⑥ A: How many students are there? B: (**At school** – **Ten**).
- ⑦ A: (**Who** – **How**) old are you? B: I'm 10 years old.
- ⑧ A: (**How** – **Who**) do they go to the club? B: By car.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① A: (**Who**) is your name? B: My name is Ahmed.
- ② A: (**When**) is Mona now? B: She is at home.
- ③ A: (**Who**) color do you like? B: I like black.
- ④ A: How (**old**) is the window? B: It's 90 cm.
- ⑤ A: (**When**) do you go to work? B: I drive to work.
- ⑥ A: (**What**) are you happy? B: Because I've got the full mark.
- ⑦ A: How (**much**) is he? B: He's 20 years old.
- ⑧ A: How (**many**) is it? B: It's 20 pounds.
- ⑨ A: (**What**) are they? B: They are my friends.
- ⑩ A: (**What**) do you study? B: In the evening.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions

كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة عن قطعة القراءة المكونة من (80 - 90) كلمة في الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

I'm Nour. I use social media almost every day. Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts. I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. My teacher always says it's important to be safe online. We shouldn't contact people we don't know. We should use strong passwords.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.

لتحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كها مرتين، ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التي تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about _____.

- a) playing video games b) social media c) reading books d) playing sports

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

عليك أن تركز مع تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها، وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات ما بين الأشخاص والشخصيات في القطعة.

We can share information and _____ on social media.

- a) computers b) devices c) thoughts d) passwords

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

لتحدد وتستنتج معاني الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التي وردت فيها الكلمة لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "important" means _____.

- a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها ببعضها.

What is social media?

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts.

Make logical inferences from the text.

عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لاستخرج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

Why is social media important?

Because I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لتنمك من تلخيص الفقرة، قم بقراءة القطعة جيدًا واستخرج النقاط الهامة والرئيسية وضعها في جمل مفيدة.

Summarize the text in two sentences.

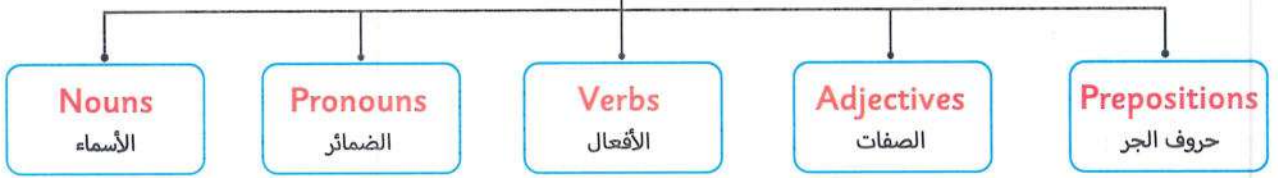
Social media is useful, but you shouldn't contact people you don't know. You should use strong passwords.

2. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة جمل وفقرات بشكل صحيح. 🗣️



Parts of Speech أجزاء الكلام



Nouns

* هي اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ola, cat, house, bus ...

* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلاً (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولاً به (بعد الفعل).

e.g. **Nada** has a **car**.

A **monkey** is climbing the **tree**.

✓ Checkpoint Underline the nouns:

① Ali is tall.

② My school is big.

③ Mona likes pizza.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, we, it ...

e.g. **I** have a car.

It is my car.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the pronouns:

① (**Ali** – **He**) is my brother.

② (**The elephant** – **It**) is big.

③ (**They** – **The boys**) are running.

Verbs

* تعبر الأفعال عن حدث.

e.g. play, go, drink, ...

* يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل.

e.g. They **play** football.

Nader **goes** to school on foot.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the verbs:

I get up at 6 am. I wash my face. I eat my breakfast. I walk to school. I study at school. I play tennis after school.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. fat, nice, hungry, ...

* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. I bought a **new** car yesterday.

The giraffe is **tall**.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the adjectives:

① girl – boy – big – man

② small – read – run – write

③ book – pen – tall – pencil

Prepositions

* للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. at, under, behind, ...

* تأتي حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. The cat is **under** the tree.

The chair is **behind** you.

I drink coffee **in** the morning.

✓ Checkpoint Put the words in the correct order:

① the sea – **The fish** – in – is.

② on – **The hat** – my head – is.

③ is – at – home – **Mom**.

④ watch – at – TV – **I** – night.



Notes

Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at with times:
مع الأوقات

3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night

in with months, seasons,
and years:
مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات

summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018

on with days and dates:
مع الأيام والتواريخ

Friday/ 5th May/ July 10th/ the weekend

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

- ① I go to bed (**at** – in – on) 8 o'clock.
- ② We visit Grandma (**in** – on – **by**) Friday.
- ③ I was born (**at** – on – in) January.
- ④ My birthday is (**on** – in – **at**) June 7th.
- ⑤ My father sometimes comes late (**in** – on – **at**) night.
- ⑥ I bought a new car (**in** – on – **at**) 2023.
- ⑦ The football match is (**in** – on – **at**) 7 pm.
- ⑧ Do you study (**on** – in – **at**) the evening?



في اللغة الإنجليزية، يتم ترتيب الكلمات حسب نوع الجملة:

Affirmative sentence:

1. الجملة المثبتة:

Subject	الفاعل	verb	فعل	complement	تكملة الجملة
e.g. I		go		to school every day.	
e.g. The boys		play		tennis every Friday.	

(Auxiliary verbs) الجمل التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة:

في الجمل التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة مثل "be" / "do" / "have" / "can"، يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفعل.

Subject	الفاعل	auxiliary verb	فعل مساعد	verb	فعل	complement	تكملة الجملة
e.g. He		can/ should/ must		do		his homework.	
e.g. We		are		playing		outside.	
e.g. She		will		love		this game.	
e.g. Omar		doesn't		have		a red pen.	

(Imperative sentence) الجملة الأمرية:

في الجمل التي تحتوي على الأمر، يتم وضع الفعل في بداية الجملة دون وجود فاعل يظهر بشكل صريح.

Verb	فعل	complement	تكملة الجملة
Wash		your hands.	
Eat		healthy food.	

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

يتم تغيير ترتيب الكلمات، حيث يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل.

Auxiliary verb	فعل مساعد	subject	الفاعل	verb	فعل	complement	تكملة السؤال
Do		you		have		any brothers?	
Is		Sally		playing		the piano?	

Wh- question question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

يتم وضع كلمة الاستفهام أول الترتيب ثم الفعل المساعد يليه الفاعل.

Wh- word	كلمة الاستفهام	auxiliary verb	فعل مساعد	subject	الفاعل	verb	فعل	complement	تكملة السؤال
When		do		you		go		to school?	
Where		are		they		swimming		at the moment?	

✓ Checkpoint Read and reorder:

- ① book – I – read – a.
- ② are – singing – Birds.
- ③ to – We – school – walk.



Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التي تساعد في الكتابة بشكل سليم.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

في بداية الجملة (الخبرية / الأمرية) / السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (أ) في أي مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

1. Ahmed is from Egypt.
2. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.
3. Today is Monday.
4. I visited the Egyptian Museum in August.

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following:

- 1 i visit my Grandpa on fridays.
- 2 asmaa went to china last year.
- 3 this is Mike from america.



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

I eat breakfast every day.
Shut the window, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

في نهاية السؤال.

- * Wh- question:
What are you doing?
- * Yes/No question:
Do you have a car?



Exclamation point
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوي.

Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

- 1 The cat is red
- 2 Where is the dog
- 3 I love ice cream
- 4 You're great
- 5 Do you like chicken
- 6 Wow



Comma
الفاصلة السفلى

نستخدم الفاصلة عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

I like football, tennis, and basketball.

تستخدم بعد «Yes/ No» في الإجابات.

Yes, of course.

تستخدم قبل «but».

I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books.

تستخدم قبل «please» إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Can I have some tea, please?

✓ Checkpoint Put the (,) in the right place:

- 1 Can you help me please?
- 2 Hana's hobbies are reading drawing and swimming.
- 3 No I don't have a car.



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

توضع قبل «s» الملكية.

Kareem's bag is blue.

توضع في الاختصارات.

I'm a girl.

✓ Checkpoint Put the (') in the right place:

- 1 This is mom s room.
- 2 She s Sarah.
- 3 What s your name?

Practice on Punctuation Marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

- 1 Mr. ali is my teacher
- 2 noha goes to the club on monday.
- 3 What s your favorite color
- 4 do you like bananas
- 5 the baby is sleeping
- 6 i like to eat cheese
- 7 don't touch the candle



Tips for Writing a Paragraph

نصائح لكتابة فقرة

هذا الجزء جيداً للتعرف على طريقة الكتابة الصحيحة للفقرة الإنشائية:

ضع عنواناً للفقرة .

أول كل جملة حرف **capital letter**.

My family

I have a wonderful family. I love all of them. I live with my parents. **I** have one sister. My father is a doctor. My mother is a teacher. We go to the park on the weekend. We watch TV together in the evening. I **love** my family.

استخدم الزمن المناسب.

نهاية كل جملة: **period**.

- تأكد من استخدام جمل بسيطة ومرتبّة .

تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

لاحظ الآتي

Now, it's Your Turn. الآن حان دورك.

Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My school"

teachers – class



MODULE 1

Unit 1 : Food, Nature, and Culture

Unit 2 : My Healthy Body

Unit

1

Food, Nature, and Culture

الطعام والطبيعة والثقافة



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- identify new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River. - يتعرف على مفردات جديدة تتعلق بالحياة في نهر النيل.
- answer comprehension questions based on a listening text about life in the Nile River. - يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم بناءً على نص استماع حول الحياة في نهر النيل.

Speaking:

- ask and answer questions about the Nile River and the hot desert. - يسأل ويجيب أسئلة عن نهر النيل والصحراء الحارة.
- use new vocabulary related to life in the Nile River and the hot desert. - يستخدم مفردات جديدة تتعلق بالحياة في نهر النيل والصحراء الحارة.
- recognize and repeat consonant clusters in common words. - يتعرف على مجموعات الحروف الساكنة وتكرارها في الكلمات الشائعة.

Reading:

- discuss the moral of a short story. - يناقش الدرس الأخلاقي لقصة قصيرة.
- identify the sequence of events and the end in a story. - يتعرف على تسلسل الأحداث ونهايتها في القصة.
- reorder the steps of an Egyptian food recipe. - يعيد ترتيب خطوات وصفة طعام مصرية.

Writing:

- complete sentences using the adverbs of frequency. - يكمل جملًا باستخدام ظروف التكرار.
- write a recipe using sequence words. - يكتب وصفة باستخدام كلمات التسلسل.
- make a flyer about your favorite restaurant. - يصمم نشرة إعلانية عن مطعمه المفضل.



Lesson 1

Life Along the Nile

الحياة على طول نهر النيل



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary

water weeds	أعشاب مائية	The Nile River	نهر النيل	insects	حشرات
hunt	يصطاد	crocodile	تمساح	survive	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
role	دور	protect	يحمي		

Extra vocabulary

life	حياة	colorful (adj.)	ملون	plants	نباتات
birds	طيور	tiny (adj.)	صغير جداً (ضئيل)	creatures	مخلوقات
larger (adj.)	أكبر	animals	حيوانات	scary (adj.)	مخيف
near	بالقرب من	huge (adj.)	ضخم	important (adj.)	هام

Expressions and Phrases

That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
kings of the Nile	ملوك النيل	not really	ليس تمامًا
play an important role	يلعب دورًا هامًا	Wow!	رائع!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
flow	يتدفق	flowed		hunt	يصطاد	hunted	
survive	ينجو	survived		protect	يحمي	protected	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
come	يأتى	came		find	يجد	found	

Where Life Flows حيث تتدفق الحياة



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Ahmed

Look at the small fish in the Nile River! They are so colorful.

انظري إلى الأسماك الصغيرة في نهر النيل! إنها ملونة للغاية.

Yes! Do you know that small fish eat plants in the water? These are called water weeds.

نعم! هل تعلم أن الأسماك الصغيرة تأكل النباتات في الماء؟ وهي تسمى الأعشاب المائية.



Laila



Ahmed

That's interesting! What about birds—what do they eat?

هذا مثير للاهتمام! ماذا عن الطيور - ماذا تأكل؟

Birds eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the river.

تأكل الطيور الأسماك الأصغر والحشرات وحتى النباتات بالقرب من النهر.



Laila



Ahmed

Wow! What about big fish?

رائع! ماذا عن الأسماك الكبيرة؟

They eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny creatures in the water.

إنها تأكل الأسماك الصغيرة والحشرات والمخلوقات الصغيرة في الماء.



Laila



Ahmed

And crocodiles—what do they eat?

والتماسيح - ماذا تأكل؟

They eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals that come near the water.

إنها تأكل الأسماك والطيور، وأحيانًا الحيوانات الأكبر حجمًا التي تقترب من الماء.



Laila



Ahmed

Huge crocodiles are scary! Do any animals hunt them?

التماسيح الضخمة مخيفة! هل يصطادها أي حيوان؟

Not really—they are the kings of the Nile!

ليس حقًا - إنهم ملوك النيل!



Laila



Ahmed

It's amazing how all animals in the river find food to survive.

إنه لأمر مدهش كيف تجد جميع الحيوانات في النهر طعامًا للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

Each animal plays an important role—that's why we must protect the river.

يلعب كل حيوان دورًا مهمًا - ولهذا السبب يجب علينا حماية النهر.



Laila

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Crocodiles are hunted by many animals. ()
- 2 The Nile River is not important for both animals and people. ()
- 3 Small fish in the Nile River eat water weeds. ()
- 4 Crocodiles are the kings of the Nile River. ()
- 5 Big fish in the Nile River eat big animals. ()



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Small fish in the Nile River eat plants in the water, called water weeds.
- تتغذى الأسماك الصغيرة في نهر النيل على النباتات الموجودة في الماء والتي تسمى بالأعشاب المائية.
- ✓ Birds eat small fish, insects, and plants near the river.
- تأكل الطيور الأسماك الصغيرة والحشرات والنباتات بالقرب من النهر.
- ✓ Big fish eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny creatures in the water.
- تأكل الأسماك الكبيرة الأسماك الأصغر والحشرات والمخلوقات الصغيرة في الماء.
- ✓ Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals that come near the water.
- تأكل التماسيح الأسماك والطيور، وأحيانًا الحيوانات الأكبر حجمًا التي تقترب من الماء.
- ✓ Huge crocodiles are scary.
- التماسيح الضخمة مخيفة.
- ✓ No animals hunt crocodiles; they are the kings of the Nile.
- لا يوجد حيوانات تصطاد التماسيح؛ فهم ملوك النيل.
- ✓ All animals in the river find food to survive.
- تجد جميع الحيوانات في النهر الطعام للبقاء على قيد الحياة.
- ✓ Each animal plays an important role, so we must protect the river.
- يلعب كل حيوان دورًا مهمًا، لذلك يجب علينا حماية النهر.

Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 In Egypt, Nile (crocodiles – weeds – insects – plants) are large and scary.
- 2 Teachers play an important (match – game – role – music) in our lives.
- 3 Some people think parrots are beautiful (weeds – plants – insects – creatures).
- 4 The (scary – cute – nice – kind) spider made her afraid.
- 5 Animals need food and water to (come – survive – dream – fly).
- 6 Foxes (feed – live – hunt – run) small animals like rabbits.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Crocodiles eat fish,, and sometimes large animals.
a) plants b) birds c) grass d) weeds
- 2 They are strong and
a) nice b) kind c) cute d) scary
- 3 Crocodiles are the kings of the
a) farm b) sea c) Nile d) desert
- 4 We must the river and its life.
a) protect b) flow c) survive d) find

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 5 Camels can for days without drinking water.
a) sleep b) eat c) survive d) come
- 6 Rivers from the mountains to the sea.
a) walk b) swim c) play d) flow
- 7 Lions in groups to catch food.
a) protect b) hunt c) flow d) find
- 8 Some, like bees, help flowers grow.
a) food b) animals c) plants d) insects
- 9 Water grow in lakes and rivers.
a) weeds b) pipes c) tanks d) bottles
- 10 Sunglasses our eyes from the sun.
a) protect b) live c) eat d) play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Crocodiles – Nile – hunt – water weeds

There are many rivers around the world. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is home to many different animals. (1) are strong and dangerous. They (2) large animals in or near the water. Small fish in the river eat (3) Birds eat insects, small fish, and plants near the river.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In the Nile River, small colorful fish eat water weeds. Birds feed on small fish, insects, and river plants. Big fish eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny water creatures. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals. Huge crocodiles are scary, and no animals really hunt them—they are the **kings of the Nile**. All animals find food to survive. We must protect the river and its life because each animal plays an important role.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 fish eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny water creatures.
a) Low b) Big c) Tiny d) Scary
- 2 The "**kings of the Nile**" refers to the
a) weeds b) insects c) crocodiles d) birds

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do crocodiles eat?

.....

- 4 Why do we need to protect the Nile River?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 so – fish – **The** – colorful – small – are.

.....

- 2 small fish, – eat – **Birds** – insects, – plants – and.

.....

- 3 food – survive – to – animals – find – **All**.

.....

- 4 larger animals – birds, – **Crocodiles** – fish, – eat – and.

.....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 what do big fish eat

.....

- 2 crocodiles are kings of the Nile

.....



Food in the Hot Desert الطعام في الصحراء الحارة



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

energy	طاقة	owls	بوم (جمع بومة)
nature	الطبيعة	balance	توازن

Extra vocabulary

hot (adj.)	حار	desert	صحراء	dry (adj.)	جاف
snakes	ثعابين	rats	فئران	lizards	سحالي
camel	جمل	strong (adj.)	قوى	rocks	صخور
cool (adj.)	منتعش / بارد	others	آخرون	cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة

Expressions and Phrases

during the day	أثناء النهار	come out	يظهر
at night	أثناء الليل	stay in balance	يحافظ على التوازن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
live يعيش	lived	stay يبقى	stayed
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
give يعطي	gave	hide يختبئ	hid

Animals in the desert حيوانات في الصحراء

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What animals do you think live in the desert?



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like **rats**⁽¹⁾ or **lizards**⁽²⁾. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects, which give them **energy**⁽³⁾. Some animals **hide**⁽⁴⁾ under rocks to stay cool during the day. Others, like **owls**⁽⁵⁾, come out at night when it is cooler. Each animal has an important role in the desert. They help **nature**⁽⁶⁾ stay in **balance**⁽⁷⁾.



- | | |
|-----|----------------|
| (1) | فئران |
| (2) | سحالي |
| (3) | طاقة |
| (4) | يختبئ |
| (5) | بوم (جمع بومة) |
| (6) | الطبيعة |
| (7) | توازن |



Checkpoint

Why do some animals hide under rocks?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

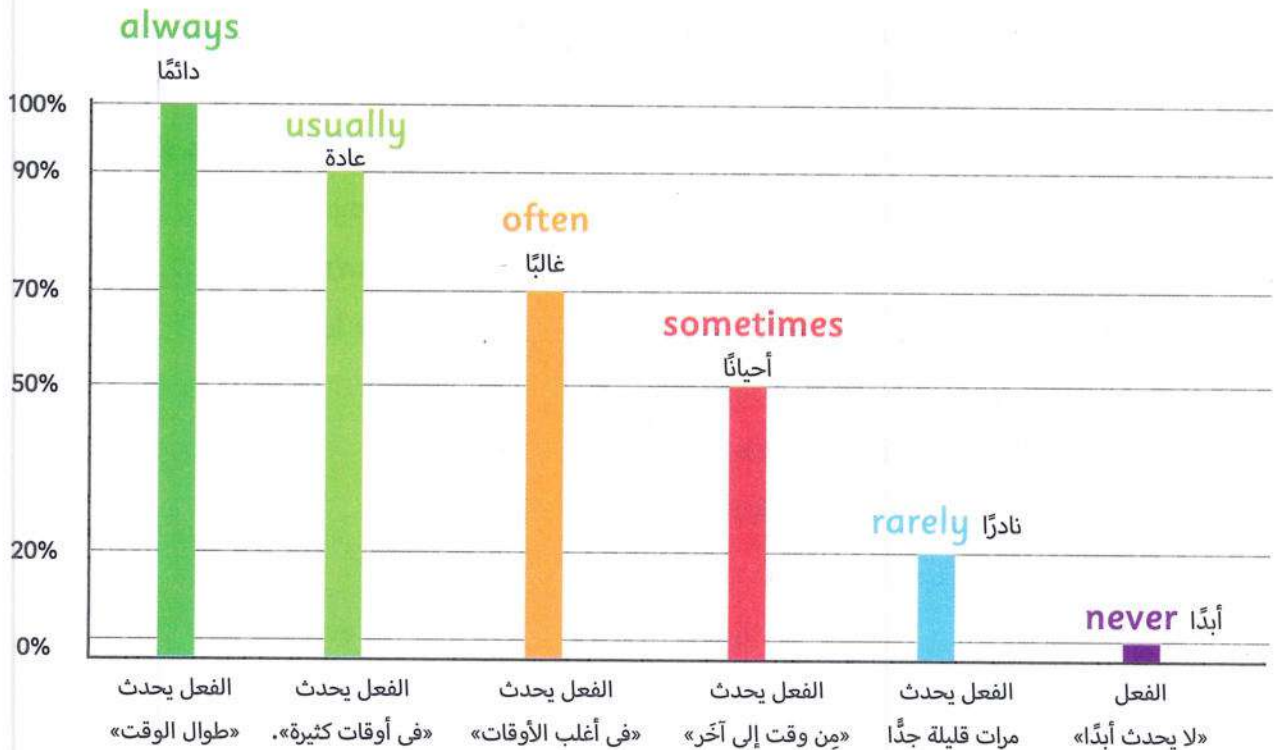
- ✓ Many animals live in the hot and dry desert. - تعيش العديد من الحيوانات في الصحراء الحارة والجافة.
- ✓ Snakes eat small animals like rats or lizards. - تأكل الثعابين حيوانات صغيرة كالفئران أو السحالي.
- ✓ Camels eat plants to stay strong. - تأكل الجمال النباتات لتبقى قوية.
- ✓ Lizards eat insects for energy. - تأكل السحالي الحشرات للحصول على الطاقة.
- ✓ Some animals hide under rocks during the day, while others like owls come out at night. - تختبئ بعض الحيوانات تحت الصخور أثناء النهار، بينما يخرج البعض الآخر كالبوم ليلاً.
- ✓ Each animal plays an important role, helping nature stay in balance. - يلعب كل حيوان دورًا مهمًا يساعد الطبيعة في الحفاظ على توازنها.

B) Language in Use

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use **adverbs of frequency** to talk about **how often** something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للحديث عن مدى تكرار حدوث شيء ما.



Notes:

ملاحظات:

لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار تسبق الفعل:

Subject (فاعل) + **adverbs of frequency** (ظروف التكرار) + main verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

e.g. Snakes **never eat** plants.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:

Subject (فاعل) + verb to be (am / is / are) + **adverbs of frequency** (ظروف التكرار) ...

e.g. Lizards **are sometimes** dangerous.



Got it:

She (always is) late.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (is always)؛ لأن (am / is / are) تسبق ظروف التكرار.

Quick Practice on Adverbs of Frequency

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Omar (never) does his homework right. He's a clever boy.
- 2 It (usually) snows in the summer.
- 3 I (rarely) have my breakfast before school. I never miss it.
- 4 My sister (sometimes) watches TV at night. She always sleeps early.
- 5 My friends (often are) at the park on Fridays.
- 6 My mom (always) drinks coffee. She doesn't like it.
- 7 The train (rarely) arrives on time. It's never late.
- 8 I (always am) good at school.
- 9 I (never) watch TV. I watch it every day.
- 10 She (often) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- 11 My sister (helps always) my mom.
- 12 She (always) goes to bed late. She's early every night.
- 13 Walaa and Omar (usually) eat fast food. It's unhealthy.
- 14 Manar (always is) tidy and organized.
- 15 Young kids (usually are) creative.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوين الجمل:

- 16 late – never – My brother – for – his – is – school.

- 17 never – drink – at – My parents – coffee – night.

- 18 usually – the city – We – on Sundays – visit – park.

- 19 school – always – Ahmed – to – walks.

- 20 usually – dinner – at – We – 7 pm – eat.

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 In the desert, eat insects to get energy.
a) lizards b) cows c) fish d) crocodiles
- 2 Snakes often eat small animals, like or lizards. **SB**
a) rats b) hippos c) camels d) lions
- 3 are birds that hunt at night.
a) Lizards b) Owls c) Camels d) Snakes
- 4 Birds, trees, and rivers are part of
a) balance b) desert c) nature d) home
- 5 Each animal in the desert has an role to play. **SB**
a) simple b) easy c) important d) hard
- 6 Insects give lizards **SB**
a) water b) energy c) food d) home
- 7 He can stand on one foot. He has great
a) nature b) balance c) rock d) energy
- 8 Camels eat **SB**
a) plants b) insects c) birds d) lizards

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

come out – rocks – face – strong

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes eat small animals like rats and lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay (1).....
Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under (2).....
to stay cool. Others, like owls, (3)..... at night.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 animals – Desert – food – rarely – find. **SB**
.....
- 2 plants – Camels – strong – to – eat – stay.
.....
- 3 balance – help – Animals – in – stay – nature.
.....
- 4 never – water – Snakes – their bodies – store – in.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 I (usually) play tennis. I don't know how.
- 2 My sister never eats sweets, but she (never) eats healthy foods.
- 3 Rabbits (always) eat meat. They eat carrots.
- 4 Maged (never is) late for school.
- 5 Farmers (grow usually) vegetables.
- 6 They (do usually) their homework in the evening.
- 7 Hoda (usually is) late for school.
- 8 Hala likes apples. She (never) eats them.
- 9 I (sometimes) play basketball. I don't like it.
- 10 It's (rarely) sunny and hot in the summer.
- 11 I (eat often) dates as a snack. I love them.
- 12 Dina (goes always) to her school on her bike.
- 13 She is (always) tired after work. She's always active.
- 14 They (always are) ready for the exams.
- 15 She (meets always) up with her cousins on Fridays.
- 16 My father (goes always) to work by car.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 the desert is hot and dry

- 2 how can animals live in the desert

6 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (30 - 40) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

"Animals in the desert"

hot and dry – lizards – owls





Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

crown	تاج	leaves	أوراق الشجر	shade	ظل
trunk	جذع الشجرة	branches	فروع / أغصان	selfish (adj.)	أناني

Extra vocabulary

garden	حديقته	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	friends	أصدقاء
feelings	مشاعر	another	آخر	needs	احتياجات
place	مكان	weak (adj.)	ضعيف	better (adj.)	أفضل
interest	اهتمام	concern	قلق	shadow	ظل

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	ذات مرة / كان يا ما كان	come back home	يعود إلى المنزل
look sad	يبدو حزينا	take care of	يعتنى بـ
care for	يعتنى بـ	give back	يرد الجميل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
rest	يستريح	rested		pass	يمر	passed	
realize	يُدرك / يلاحظ	realized		care for	يعتنى / يهتم بـ	cared for	
water	يروي / يسقى	watered		appreciate	يقدر	appreciated	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
give	يعطي	gave		bend	ينحني	bent	
begin	يبدأ	began		become	يُصبح	became	

Definitions

crown	a special hat worn by kings or queens	قبعة مميزة يرتديها الملوك أو الملكات
care for	to show interest and concern for something	أن تُظهر اهتمامًا وقلقًا تجاه شيء ما
shade	a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked by something	ظل مظلم يُنشأ عندما يتم حجب ضوء الشمس بشيء ما
trunk	the main, thick part of a tree supporting its branches and leaves	الجزء الرئيسي والسميك من الشجرة الذي يدعم أغصانها وأوراقها
branch	a part that grows out from a tree's trunk, where leaves grow	جزء ينمو من جذع الشجرة، حيث تنمو الأوراق
selfish	caring for oneself only	يهتم بنفسه فقط

The Giving Tree الشجرة المعطاءة

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. Tom used the tree for everything. He made **crowns**⁽¹⁾ from its **leaves**⁽²⁾ and ate its delicious



apples. He rested in its **shade**⁽³⁾ and climbed its **trunk**⁽⁴⁾ with his friends. But Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or needs. He rarely gave it food or water.

- | | |
|-----|-----------------|
| (1) | تيجان (جمع تاج) |
| (2) | أوراق الشجر |
| (3) | ظل |
| (4) | جذع |

✓ **Checkpoint** Tom made crowns from the tree's (**flowers** – **branches** – **leaves** – **apples**).

The middle

Tom traveled to another place. Years passed and Tom came back home. The tree looked sad. Its leaves **bent**⁽⁵⁾, and its branches were **weak**⁽⁶⁾. When Tom saw the tree, he **realized**⁽⁷⁾ that he had been selfish.

- | | |
|-----|-------|
| (5) | انحنت |
| (6) | ضعيف |
| (7) | أدرك |

✓ **Checkpoint** When Tom came back, the tree looked (**happy** – **angry** – **sad** – **fresh**).

The end

Tom started to care for the tree, watering it, and protecting it from the sun. Slowly, the tree began to become better. Tom learned that **taking**⁽⁸⁾ care of something meant **giving back**⁽⁹⁾, and he and the tree became the best of friends.

- | | |
|-----|------------|
| (8) | يعتني بشيء |
| (9) | يرد الجميل |

✓ **Checkpoint** Tom started to (**cut** – **climb** – **care for** – **ignore**) the tree.

The moral of the story

We should appreciate those who care for us.

ينبغي علينا أن نقدر أولئك الذين يهتمون بنا.



Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 The apple tree gave the boy everything. ()
- 2 The boy gave the tree water and food every day. ()
- 3 When Tom came back, the tree was strong and healthy. ()

Problem المشكلة

The boy took more from the tree than he gave.
أخذ الصبي من الشجرة أكثر مما أعطى.

Solution الحل

He helped the tree grow again.
لقد ساعد الشجرة على النمو مرة أخرى.

Result النتيجة

The tree became healthy.
The boy learned to care for it like it cared for him.
أصبحت الشجرة سليمة.
تعلم الصبي أن يعتني بها كما اعتنت به.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Tom loved a big, strong apple tree. أحب توم شجرة تفاح كبيرة وقوية.
- ✓ He used the tree for everything. استخدمها في كل شيء.
- ✓ He made crowns, ate apples, rested in the shade, and climbed its trunk. صنع تيجاناً، وأكل التفاح، واستراح في الظل، وتسلق جذعها.
- ✓ Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or needs. لم يفكر توم قط في مشاعر الشجرة أو احتياجاتها.
- ✓ He rarely gave it food or water. نادراً ما كان يُطعمها أو يُسقيها.
- ✓ Years passed, and Tom returned; the tree looked sad. مرّت السنوات، وعاد توم؛ بدت الشجرة حزينة.
- ✓ Tom realized he had been selfish. أدرك توم أنه كان أنانياً.
- ✓ He started to care for the tree, and they became best friends. بدأ يهتم بالشجرة، وأصبحتا صديقين حميمين.

A consonant cluster مجموعة الحروف الساكنة



Listen, point, and say:

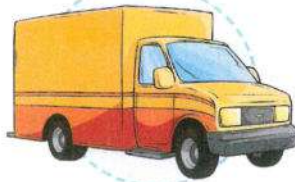
استمع، أشير، وقل:

A **consonant cluster** is a sequence of two or more consonant sounds without vowels, such as **str-** in **strong** or **bl-** in **black**. They can appear at the beginning, middle, or end of words.

مجموعة الحروف الساكنة هي عبارة عن سلسلة من صوتين ساكنين أو أكثر بدون حروف متحركة، مثل الحروف str- في كلمة "strong" أو حروف bl- في كلمة "black". يمكن أن تظهر في بداية الكلمات أو وسطها أو نهايتها.



plant نبات



truck شاحنة



branches فروع الشجر



crocodiles تماسيح



black أسود



drink يشرب



tree شجرة



crops محاصيل



spring فصل الربيع

Checkpoint Choose a cluster from the box below and fill in the blanks:



bl – cr – pl – tr – dr

– ink

– ack

– uck

– ant

– ops



Read the text and circle the consonant clusters: **SB**

Ahmed climbed the trunk and rested near the branches. He saw a small crocodile beside the stream, and big fish swam past swiftly. Laila smiled and drank from the spring, then watched birds perch near the bank.

Practice



Lesson 3

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- 1 Tom had a/an in his garden. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
 a) mango tree b) banana tree c) apple tree d) palm tree
- 2 Tom ate the tree's
 a) apples b) leaves c) flowers d) roots
- 3 Tom didn't give the tree
 a) apple b) food and water c) crown d) name
- 4 At the end, the tree became
 a) sad b) tall c) weak d) strong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony. **SB**
 a) shade b) crown c) branch d) sail
- 2 My friend is not; he always helps others.
 a) selfish b) weak c) better d) strong
- 3 We sat under the tree to rest in the on a hot day. **SB**
 a) crown b) sail c) shade d) branch
- 4 A is the main, thick part of a tree supporting its branches and leaves.
 a) trunk b) root c) paper d) crown
- 5 To means to show interest and concern for something.
 a) clean up b) pass out c) care for d) turn off
- 6 A bird built a nest on a high of the tree. **SB**
 a) crown b) shade c) sail d) branch
- 7 Mangoes are so and sweet.
 a) weak b) better c) delicious d) another
- 8 We should be kind and not hurt anyone's
 a) trees b) feelings c) gardens d) trunks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

selfish – strong – apples – weak

SB

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was (1) Tom knew that he was (2) So, he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew (3) again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tom loved a big apple tree in his garden. He played under it, climbed its trunk, and ate its apples. But Tom was selfish. He never gave the tree food or water. Years passed, and Tom traveled to another place. When he came back, the tree was weak. Its leaves bent, and its branches were thin. Tom felt sorry. He started to care for the tree. He gave it water and protected it from the sun. The tree became strong again, and Tom learned the meaning of love and care.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Tom loved a big tree.
a) mango b) banana c) apple d) olive
- 2 The tree became after many years.
a) strong b) small c) tall d) weak

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Tom play?
.....
- 4 How was Tom selfish?
.....
- 5 What did Tom do to help the tree?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 started – for – He – tree – to – care – the.
.....
- 2 the – shade – Tom – tree's – in – rested.
.....
- 3 apples – ate – They – the – from – tree.
.....
- 4 trunk – climbed – Nour – the – of – tree – the. Super Question ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 tom and the tree became the best of friends
.....
- 2 how can we care for those who help us
.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

recipe	وصفة	koshari	كشري	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير
lentils	عدس	sauce	صلصة/خلطة	flavor	نكهة / طعم
chickpeas	حمص	first	أولاً	next	ثانياً
then	ثم	after that	بعد ذلك	finally	وأخيراً

Extra vocabulary

tasty (adj.)	لذيذ	Egyptian meal	وجبة مصرية	simple (adj.)	بسيط
bowl	وعاء / طبق	rice	أرز	pot	إناء / وعاء
pasta	مكرونة	chopped (adj.)	مقطع/مفروم	garlic	ثوم
oil	زيت	vinegar	خل	spices	توابل
crispy (adj.)	مقرمش	onions	بصل	slices	شرائح
crunchy (adj.)	مقرمش	spicy (adj.)	حار / متبل	Dakka	دقة (خليط من الثوم والخل)
mix	مزيج / خليط	traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	yummy (adj.)	شهي جداً
cup	كوب	flyer	منشور دعائي / مطوية		

Expressions and Phrases

cut ... into	يقطع ... إلى	turn brown	يصبح بني اللون
--------------	--------------	------------	----------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
prepare	يُحضّر	prepared		boil	يغلي / يسلق	boiled	
fry	يقلّي	fried		add	يضيف	added	
pour	يسكب / يصب	poured		turn	يتحول / يُصبح	turned	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
cut	يقطع	cut		put	يضع	put	



Let's Make a Recipe!

هيا نمنع وصفة!



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My Favorite Egyptian Food

Koshari is a tasty **Egyptian meal**⁽¹⁾ with many simple **ingredients**⁽²⁾ in one bowl.

First, you need to cook rice in a **pot**⁽³⁾ with water. In another pot, prepare small pasta. Then, **boil lentils**⁽⁴⁾ in water. For the **red sauce**⁽⁵⁾, fry some **chopped garlic**⁽⁶⁾ in oil, add tomato sauce, **vinegar**⁽⁷⁾, and some **spices**⁽⁸⁾.

You also need to make **crispy onions**⁽⁹⁾. First, cut them into thin slices. Next, **fry**⁽¹⁰⁾ them in oil until they turn brown and **crunchy**⁽¹¹⁾. After that, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. Then, add some **chickpeas**⁽¹²⁾.

Finally, **pour**⁽¹³⁾ the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top. There are two more sauces you can add for more **flavor**⁽¹⁴⁾. One is a spicy tomato sauce, and the other is **Dakka**⁽¹⁵⁾ which is made with garlic and vinegar. This mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy. Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food.



- | | |
|------|---------------|
| (1) | وجبة مصرية |
| (2) | مكونات/مقادير |
| (3) | إناء/وعاء |
| (4) | اسلق العدس |
| (5) | صلصة حمراء |
| (6) | الثوم المفروم |
| (7) | خل |
| (8) | توابل/بهارات |
| (9) | البصل المقرمش |
| (10) | أقل |
| (11) | مقرمش |
| (12) | حمص |
| (13) | يصب/يسكب |
| (14) | طعم/نكهة |
| (15) | دقة |

Ingredients

Main ingredients:

- ✓ 2 cups white rice
- ✓ 1 cup brown lentils
- ✓ 2 cups small pasta
- ✓ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ cups cooked chickpeas

Crispy onions:

- ✓ 3 large sliced onions
- ✓ 1 cup vegetable oil for frying

Sauces:

- ✓ Red sauce
- ✓ Spicy tomato sauce
- ✓ Dakka sauce



Tip!

When writing a recipe, organize the steps using sequence words like: First, ... Then, ... After that, ..., Next,... Finally... .

عند كتابة وصفة، قم بتنظيم الخطوات باستخدام كلمات متسلسلة مثل:
أولاً،... ثم ... بعد ذلك،...، التالي،... أخيراً..... .

Here are some instructions to help you write about your favorite food:

- ✓ Choose your favorite food. اختر طعامك المفضل.
- ✓ Think about how it's made. فكّر كيف يتم تحضيره.
- ✓ What happens first? What comes next? ماذا يحدث أولاً؟ وماذا يأتي بعد ذلك؟
- ✓ Use sequencing words to organize your steps. استخدم كلمات التسلسل لتنظم خطواتك.
- ✓ Write (30-40) words showing the steps. اكتب فقرة من 30 إلى 40 كلمة توضح أفكارك.
- ✓ Add a title: "How to Make (your food name)". "أضف عنواناً.... "How to make"
- ✓ Glue or draw a picture of your favorite food. ألصق أو ارسم صورة لطعامك المفضل.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. الكشري وجبة مصرية لذيذة تحتوي على العديد من المكونات البسيطة في وعاء واحد.
أولاً، تحتاج إلى طهي الأرز في إناء مع الماء.
- ✓ First, you need to cook rice in a pot with water. ثم اسلق العدس في الماء.
- ✓ Then, boil lentils in water. لتحضير الصلصة الحمراء، اقل بعض الثوم المفروم في الزيت، ثم أضف صلصة الطماطم والخل وبعض التوابل.
- ✓ For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices. تحتاج أيضاً إلى تحضير بصل مقمرش.
- ✓ You also need to make crispy onions. ضع الأرز في وعاء وأضف فوقه المكرونة والعدس.
- ✓ Put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. وأخيراً، صب الصلصة الحمراء فوقه وضع البصل المقمرش على الوجه.
- ✓ Finally, pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top. الكشري طعام مصري تقليدي.
- ✓ Koshari is a traditional Egyptian food.



Think and Create

A Flyer منشور إعلاني

CLASSIC PIZZAS

MARGHERITA PIZZA 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

PEPPERONI PIZZA 13 LE
Pepperoni, sausage, bell peppers, onions, olives, mushrooms.

SUPREME PIZZA 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

PEPPERONI PIZZA 13 LE
Pepperoni, sausage, bell peppers, onions, olives, mushrooms.

MARGHERITA PIZZA 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

YOUR LOGO

WELCOME TO TASTY

8.99 LE ONLY

ORDER 2 FOR FREE DELIVERY

ALL OUR PIZZAS ARE HANDCRAFTED WITH LOVE AND FRESH, LOCALLY SOURCED INGREDIENTS.

GLUTEN-FREE AND VEGAN OPTIONS AVAILABLE UPON REQUEST.

000 123 4567 | WWW.YOUR SITE NAME.COM

SPECIALTY PIZZAS

BBQ CHICKEN PIZZA 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

VEGETARIAN PIZZA 13 LE
Pepperoni, sausage, bell peppers, onions, olives, mushrooms.

HAWAIIAN PIZZA 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

MEAT LOVER'S 13 LE
Pepperoni, sausage, bell peppers, onions, olives, mushrooms.

BUFFALO CHICKEN 10 LE
Fresh tomato sauce, mozzarella, basil, olive oil.

CREATE YOUR OWN PIZZA

STARTING AT 10 LE

CHOOSE YOUR SIZE, SAUCE, AND TOPPINGS.

CALZONES

CLASSIC CALZONE 10 LE
Ricotta, mozzarella, and parmesan cheeses served with marinara sauce on the side.

MEATBALL CALZONE 13 LE
Homemade meatballs, marinara sauce, mozzarella cheese, and parmesan baked in our crust.

When you make a flyer, make sure to:

- 1 Write a main heading – it's the big title.
١. اكتب عنوانًا رئيسيًا - إنه العنوان الكبير.

- 2 Add a sub-heading – it's the smaller title.
٢. أضف عنوانًا فرعيًا - إنه العنوان الأصغر.

- 3 Include an image – a photo or drawing.
٣. قم بتضمين صورة - صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسم.

- 4 Show a menu – it helps attract customers.
٤. إظهار القائمة - يساعد ذلك على جذب العملاء.

- 5 Use a call to action – it invites people to do something.
٥. استخدم دعوة للعمل - فهي تدعو الناس إلى القيام بشيء ما.



Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The has five simple ingredients.
a) lesson b) recipe c) show d) story
- 2 You need to lentils in water before using them.
a) cut b) boil c) clean d) bake
- 3 First, the onions into thin slices.
a) mix b) cut c) cook d) boil
- 4 We cook rice, pasta, and lentils in different
a) spoons b) pots c) cups d) knives
- 5 I like the sweet of mango.
a) hot b) thick c) flavor d) healthy
- 6 Koshari is a Egyptian food.
a) boring b) traditional c) modern d) bad
- 7 One of the main in Koshari is lentils.
a) ingredients b) plates c) meals d) recipes
- 8 the onions in oil until they turn golden brown.
a) Slice b) Fry c) Cook d) Cut

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

chickpeas – crispy – red sauce – garlic

Koshari is my favorite Egyptian food. It has rice, lentils, pasta, and more. After cooking the rice and lentils, I add onions and some (1) on top. Then I make the (2) using tomatoes, garlic, and vinegar. I also make Dakka, which is made with (3) and vinegar.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Koshari is a very famous Egyptian food. It is made of rice, lentils, pasta, chickpeas, and fried onions. People also add red sauce and Dakka, which is made from garlic and vinegar. First, the rice, lentils, and pasta are cooked in different pots. Then, they are mixed together in one bowl. Chickpeas and fried onions are added on top. Finally, the sauces are poured over the dish. Koshari is famous because it's cheap, tasty, and easy to make.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about making
 a) soup b) Koshari c) cake d) salad
- 2 People add and Dakka to Koshari.
 a) butter b) yogurt c) red sauce d) jam

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is Koshari made of?

- 4 Where are the rice, lentils, and pasta cooked?

- 5 Why is koshari famous?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 also – need – make – onions – You – to – crispy.

- 2 is – a – Koshari – food – Egyptian – traditional.

- 3 garlic – with – is – made – Dakka – vinegar – and.

- 4 pot – cook – the – First, – a – rice – in. 

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 this mix of foods makes Koshari very yummy

- 2 Koshari is a tasty egyptian meal

6 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (30 - 40) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"How to make your favorite food"

cook – sauce – yummy



Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

water weeds	أعشاب بحرية	colorful	ملون
insects	حشرات	tiny	صغير جدا (ضئيل)
crocodile	تمساح	huge	ضخم
survive	ينجو	creature	مخلوق
role	دور	scary	مخيف

Lesson (2)

energy	طاقة	strong	قوى
nature	الطبيعة	lizard	سحلية
owl	بومة	rock	صخرة
balance	توازن	dry	جاف
rats	فئران	snake	ثعبان

Lesson (3)

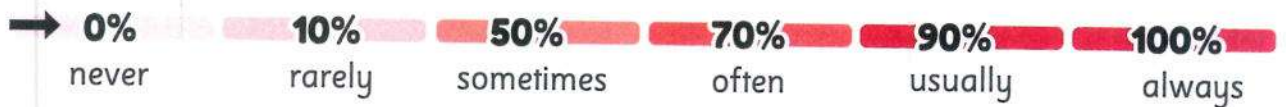
crown	تاج	delicious	لذيذ
trunk	جذع شجرة	feelings	مشاعر
branch	فرع/غصن	needs	احتياجات
selfish	أناني	weak	ضعيف
shade	ظل	water	يروي / يسقى

Lessons (4 and 5)

ingredients	مكونات	vinegar	خل
flavor	نكهة/طعم	yummy	شهي/لذيذ
tasty	لذيذ	crunchy	مقرمش
bowl	وعاء/طبق	lentils	عدس
garlic	ثوم	chickpeas	حمص

Language in Use

• Adverbs of frequency:



Subject (الفاعل) + **adverb of frequency** + main verb

e.g. Salma **always studies** English on Mondays.

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/ is/ are) + **adverb of frequency**

e.g. It **is never** cold in summer.



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
protect		ينجو
tiny		دور
creatures		حشرات
hunt		أعشاب مائية
scary		تمساح

Lesson 2	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
snakes		بوم (جمع بومة)
camels		التوازن
cool		الطبيعة
strong		طاقة
dry		سحالي

Lesson 3	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
leaves		ظل
delicious		فروع/أغصان
weak		جذع الشجرة
feelings		تاج
rest		أناني

Lessons 4 and 5	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
garlic		مكونات
vinegar		نكهة/طعم
tasty		عدس
pot		أرز

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
cut			gave
pour		hunt	.....
.....	stayed	flow	.....
hide			became
protect		fry	.....

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Life in the Nile River"

- o The Nile is + وصف لنهر النيل.
- o It's home to + الكائنات التي تعيش فيه.
- o Crocodiles hunt + الحيوانات التي تصطادها.
- o Small fish eat + ما تتغذى عليه.
- o Birds eat + ما تتغذى عليه.

"Life in the Nile River"

The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It's home to many animals. Crocodiles hunt large animals in or near water. Small fish eat water weeds. Birds eat small fish.

How to write about "My favorite Egyptian recipe"

- o (اسم الأكلة) is a tasty Egyptian meal .
- o First, الخطوة الأولى.
- o Then, الخطوة الثانية.
- o After that, الخطوة التالية.
- o Finally, الخطوة الأخيرة.

"My favorite Egyptian recipe"

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal. First, cook rice, pasta, and lentils. Then, make red sauce with garlic, tomatoes, and spices. After that, fry crispy onions. Finally, serve it all in one bowl.

1 Complete the sentences:

- 1 The is important to people and animals.
- 2 Small fish eat
- 3 Lizards eat to get energy.
- 4 are dangerous and scary.
- 5 Crocodiles birds and large animals.



2 Look at the words in bold. Match the words to their meanings:

1 crown	a) the main, thick part of a tree supporting its branches and leaves
2 care for	b) caring for oneself only
3 shade	c) a part that grows out from a tree's trunk, where leaves grow
4 trunk	d) a dark shadow created when sunlight is blocked by something
5 branch	e) to show interest and concern for something
6 selfish	f) a special hat worn by kings or queens

3 Let's practice sequence words using the Koshari recipe.

Number the steps, then add the correct sequence word:

- a), make crispy onions: cut them into thin pieces and fry them. ☐
- b), pour the red sauce all over it, and put the crispy onions on top. ☐
- c), cook rice in a pot and pasta in another pot. Then boil lentils. ☒
- d), add spicy sauce at the end. ☐
- e), put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. ☐
- f), fry some chopped garlic in oil and add tomato sauce. ☐



Listening

4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The tree gave Tom
a) pears b) oranges c) apples d) branches
- 2 Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was
a) healthy b) weak c) tall d) green
- 3 Tom knew that he was
a) kind b) selfish c) happy d) sad
- 4 The tree grew again.
a) weak b) small c) strong d) old



Reading

1.5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 5 The king wears a beautiful, gold
a) chair b) crown c) necklace d) dress
- 6 Some animals can in the desert without water for days.
a) survive b) serve c) solve d) save
- 7 This ice cream has a delicious of chocolate and vanilla.
a) fever b) favor c) flower d) flavor

1.5

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

crocodiles – lizards – role – strong

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or (1) Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay (2) Lizards eat insects, which give them energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool during the day. Each animal has an important (3) in the desert.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree. He used it to make crowns, eat apples, rest in its shade, and climb with friends. But Tom rarely gave it food or water. He traveled away, and years later, the tree looked sad and weak. Tom realized he had been selfish. He started to care for the tree, watering and protecting it. Slowly, it became better. Tom learned that caring means giving back. He and the tree became the best of friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Tom gave the tree food or water.
a) often b) usually c) always d) rarely
- 2 Tom realized he had been
a) strong b) selfish c) good d) poor

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Tom love the apple tree?
- 4 How did Tom start to care for the tree?
- 5 What did Tom learn in the end?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1

- 1 Koshari – a – is – Egyptian – traditional – food.
- 2 rarely – animals – find – Desert – food.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- 1 She (always) goes swimming. She hates swimming.
- 2 I (usually am) worried.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 camels eat grass
- 2 what do crocodiles eat

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة من (30 - 40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الآتية:

7

"My favorite Egyptian food"

Koshari – lentils – spices



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ahmed and Laila are at the
a) Zoo b) Market c) Farm d) Nile River
- 2 Small fish eat
a) insects b) water plants c) big fish d) birds
- 3 Crocodiles eat
a) leaves b) only plants c) many animals d) birds
- 4 Laila says crocodiles are the of the Nile.
a) kings b) pets c) toys d) children



Reading

1.5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 You can the ketchup sauce over the sandwich.
a) pour b) slice c) wash d) dry
- 2 Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone.
a) careful b) selfish c) old d) cold
- 3 I ate a salad with tomatoes.
a) crispy b) crunchy c) chopped d) boiled

SB

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

1.5

cook – fry – sauce – cut

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal. First, you need to (1) the rice, pasta, and lentils in different pots. Then, pour the red (2) all over it. After that, (3) onions in oil to make them crispy. I really like to eat Koshari with my family. It is my favorite food.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Some animals eat small animals. Snakes eat rats and lizards. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects to get energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool. Others, like owls, come out at night when it's cooler. Each animal has a role in the desert. They help nature stay in balance. Life in the desert is not easy, but animals are strong and smart.

55

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) zoo animals b) desert animals c) forest birds d) sea animals
- 2 Camels eat to stay strong.
a) meat b) insects c) rats d) plants

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do lizards eat to get energy?
- 4 Where do animals hide to stay cool?
- 5 When do owls come out?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1 began – better – to – The – become – tree.

2 traveled – Eman – country – another – to.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 She (always is) late for school.

2 Farmers (grow usually) vegetables.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 how often do you study math

2 each animal plays an important role

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding words:

اكتب فقرة من (30 - 40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الآتية:

“The Nile River”

longest – home – birds



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Snakes eat small animals like (rats – plants – insects).
- 2 Lizards eat (plants – insects – small animals) for energy.
- 3 Some animals hide under (rocks – trees – sand) to stay cool.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

fish – eat – birds – river

Hana : Look at the small in the Nile River! They are so colorful.

Laila : Yes! Do you know that small fish plants in the water? These are called water weeds.

Hana : That's interesting! What about - what do they eat?

Laila : They eat small fish, insects, and even plants near the

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Koshari is a famous Egyptian food. It has rice, pasta, lentils, and sauce. First, cook the rice in a pot and boil the pasta in another one. Then, boil the lentils in water and fry some chopped garlic. Next, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and spices to the garlic to make the red sauce. After that, fry thin slices of onions until they are crispy. Finally, put the rice, pasta, lentils, and chickpeas in a bowl. Add the red sauce and crispy onions on top.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What are the main ingredients of Koshari?
- 2 What do you put on top of Koshari?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Koshari is a/an (French – Indian – Egyptian) food.
- 4 The red sauce is made with (milk – tomatoes – yogurt).
- 5 (Boil – Pour – Fry) thin slices of onions until they are crispy.

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I (never – sometimes – rarely) watch TV. I watch it every day.
- 2 My sister (always – helps always – always helps) my mom.
- 3 Each animal has a/an (bored – ugly – important) role to play.
- 4 You can (see – add – hit) more sauces to get more flavor.
- 5 (Sharks – Camels – Pandas) live in the desert.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 any – them – Do – animals – hunt?
- 2 do – protect – the Nile River – need to – Why – we?
- 3 never – My – eats – at – brother – pizza – night.
- 4 about – Tom – thought – the tree's – needs – never.
- 5 saw – a – Eslam – crocodile – scary – the lake – beside.

Unit

2

My healthy body

جسمي الصحي



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادراً على أن:

Listening

- identify and understand vocabulary related to health.
- listen to a dialog and answer comprehension questions.

- يحدد ويفهم المفردات المتعلقة بالصحة.
- يستمع إلى حوار ويجيب على أسئلة القراءة الفهمية.

Speaking

- ask and answer questions about healthy habits.
- talk about personal healthy habits.
- recognize and repeat one-syllable words.

- يسأل ويجيب عن العادات الصحية.
- يتحدث عن العادات الصحية الشخصية.
- يتعرف على كلمات من مقطع واحد ويكررها.

Reading

- answer questions related to a text on healthy habits.
- discuss healthy habits based on the reading text.

- يجيب عن أسئلة متعلقة بنص عن العادات الصحية.
- يناقش العادات الصحية بناءً على النص المقروء.

Writing

- distinguish between countable and uncountable nouns, and apply the correct determiners in context.
 - write sentences on how to stay healthy.
 - write a paragraph about a healthcare giver.
- يميز بين الأسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة ويستخدم أدوات التحديد الصحيحة.
 - يكتب جملاً عن كيفية الحفاظ على الصحة.
 - يكتب فقرة عن مقدم الرعاية الصحية.



Lesson 1

Sports for Better Health

الرياضة لصحة أفضل



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

sports	الرياضة	football	كرة القدم	heart	قلب
muscles	عضلات	swimming	سباحة	lungs	رئتان
tired (adj.)	متعب	fit (adj.)	لائق بدنيًا	exercise / exercising	تمرين
mental health	الصحة العقلية	stressed (adj.)	متوتر	stress	التوتر / القلق

Extra vocabulary

important (adj.)	مهم	stronger (adj.)	أقوى	normal (adj.)	طبيعي
energy	طاقة	bones	عظام	regularly	بانتظام
weight	الوزن	organs	أعضاء	chest	الصدر

Expressions and Phrases

In fact	في الحقيقة	go for a walk	يذهب في نزهة
---------	------------	---------------	--------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
increase	يزيد	increased	يقلل
		reduce	reduced
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
grow	ينمو	grew	يفقد
		lose	lost

Definitions	fit	being healthy and strong because you exercise	أن تكون صحيًا وقويًا لأنك تتمرّن
	mental health	how you feel and think	كيف تشعر وتفكر
	stressed	feeling unhappy or tired	الشعور بعدم السعادة أو التعب
	lungs	the organs in your chest that help you breathe	الأعضاء في صدرك التي تساعدك على التنفس
	muscles	the parts of your body that help you move	أجزاء الجسم التي تساعدك على الحركة

"Fit, Fast, and Feeling Good" لائق بدنيًا و سريع واشعر بشعور جيد



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mazen

Mom, why is it important to play sports?

أمي، لماذا من المهم ممارسة الرياضة؟

Well, sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger.

حسنًا، الرياضة تساعدنا على البقاء بصحة جيدة وتجعل أجسامنا أقوى.



Mom



Mazen

Oh! So, if I play football, will I be stronger?

حسنًا، إذن، إن لعبت كرة القدم، فهل سأصبح أقوى؟

Yes, it makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow. It also increases energy.

نعم، إنها تجعل قلبك قويًا وتساعد عضلاتك على النمو. كما أنها تزيد الطاقة.



Mom



Mazen

What about swimming?

ماذا عن السباحة؟

Swimming is very good, too! It makes your lungs strong. In fact, it helps your whole body.

السباحة جيدة جدًا أيضًا! إنها تجعل رئتيك قويتين. في الواقع، إنها تساعد جسمك كله.



Mom



Mazen

Good, but sometimes I get tired when I play sports.

جيد، لكن أحيانًا أتعب عندما أمارس الرياضة.

That's normal. Try eating some fruit before you exercise to give you more energy.

هذا طبيعي. حاول أن تأكل بعض الفاكهة قبل التمرين لتمنحك المزيد من الطاقة.



Mom



Mazen

Alright. Sports make us fit too, right?

حسنًا. تجعلنا الرياضة لائقين أيضًا، أليس كذلك؟

Exactly! Exercise helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger.

بالضبط! التمرين يساعدك على فقدان الوزن ويجعل عظامك أقوى.



Mom



Mazen

What about our mental health? Can sports help us with that?

ماذا عن صحتنا العقلية؟ هل يمكن للرياضة أن تساعدنا في ذلك؟

Absolutely! Exercising regularly helps you sleep better and reduces stress.

بالأكيد! ممارسة التمارين بانتظام تساعدك على النوم بشكل أفضل وتقلل التوتر.



Mom



Mazen

That's great! I think I will play sports more regularly.

هذا رائع! أعتقد أنني سأمارس الرياضة بانتظام أكثر.

How about going for a walk together?

ما رأيك أن نذهب في نزهة؟



Mom



Mazen

Now? Sure! I want to be healthy.

الآن؟ بالطبع! أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة.



Read again and answer: **SB**

1 How does football make you stronger?

2 What should you do if you feel tired while playing sports?

3 Why is exercising regularly important?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Sports help us stay healthy and make our bodies stronger.
- تساعدنا الرياضة على البقاء بصحة جيدة وتجعل أجسامنا أقوى.
- ✓ Playing football makes your heart strong and helps your muscles grow.
- يقوى لعب كرة القدم قلبك ويساعد عضلاتك على النمو.
- ✓ Swimming makes your lungs strong and helps your whole body.
- تقوى السباحة رئتيك وتقيد جسمك كله.
- ✓ Eating fruit before exercise gives you more energy.
- تناول الفاكهة قبل التمرين يمنحك المزيد من الطاقة.
- ✓ Exercise helps you lose weight and makes your bones stronger.
- يساعدك التمرين على فقدان الوزن ويقوى عظامك.
- ✓ Exercising regularly helps you sleep better and reduces stress.
- يساعدك التمرين بانتظام على النوم بشكل أفضل ويقلل التوتر.
- ✓ We should play sports more regularly to be healthy.
- يجب علينا ممارسة الرياضة بانتظام لنكون أصحاء.
- ✓ Going for a walk is a good way to stay healthy.
- الذهاب في نزهة طريقة جيدة للبقاء بصحة جيدة.

Take care !

١- لتقديم الاقتراحات نستخدم:

What about / How about + (inf. + ing)?

e.g. - **What about** swimming? - **How about** going for a walk?

٢- للتعبير عن الموافقة على آراء الآخرين نستخدم:

(Exactly! / Absolutely! / Sure!)

e.g. A: Sports make us fit, right? B: **Exactly!**

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① It's important to play (games – sports – music – cards) to stay healthy.
- ② Sports help your body become (weaker – fatter – stronger – shorter).
- ③ Playing football (increases – reduces – takes – sleeps) energy.
- ④ To be (sad – worried – fit – weak) is to be healthy and strong because you exercise.
- ⑤ Exercise helps you lose (friends – time – weight – money).
- ⑥ A: Playing sports is good for us, right?
B: (Exact – Thank you – Absolutely – Oh)!



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Football strengthens Ahmed's and muscles.
a) lungs b) heart c) bones d) brain
- 2 He eats before exercising for energy.
a) chips b) fruit c) sweets d) bread
- 3 Ahmed exercises regularly in the
a) evening b) afternoon c) morning d) night
- 4 He sometimes to school to stay active.
a) runs b) drives c) walks d) cycles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The parts of the body that help you move are the
a) sports b) muscles c) lungs d) fingers
- 2 Being can harm your mental health.
a) fit b) healthy c) stressed d) active
- 3 You have two in your body that help you breathe.
a) feet b) ears c) lungs d) hands
- 4 Playing sports regularly stress.
a) increases b) grows c) helps d) reduces
- 5 Your health is how you feel and think.
a) muscle b) sports c) mental d) stressed
- 6 She some weight by walking daily. **Super Question ?**
a) made b) lost c) had d) did

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fit – muscles – lungs – dinner

Layali enjoys playing sports every week. Football makes her heart strong and helps her bones and (1) grow. Swimming helps her (2) and whole body. She eats fruit before sports for more energy. Exercise keeps Layali (3) and healthy. It makes her bones stronger too. She feels stronger every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar plays different sports to stay healthy. Football is good for his heart and muscles. Swimming makes his lungs strong and helps his whole body. He gets energy from fruit before exercising. Sports keep Omar fit and his bones strong. Regular exercise improves his mental health, too. Omar sleeps better when he plays sports often. He feels less stressed after exercising. Walking daily keeps him active and healthy. Omar's body becomes stronger with each exercise. Healthy habits make Omar happy every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Swimming makes Omar's strong.
a) feet b) head c) lungs d) eyes
- 2 The underlined word "fit" means
a) tired b) unhealthy c) sorry d) healthy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What sports does Omar play?
- 4 How does exercise help Omar sleep?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 help – Can – our – mental – sports – health?
.....
- 2 makes – Swimming – lungs – your – strong.
.....
- 3 before – Try – fruit – eating – exercise – you.
.....
- 4 help – Sports – muscles – our – stronger – grow. Super Question ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 why is it important to play sports
.....
- 2 she wants to be healthy
.....



My Habits: Now and Then عاداتي ما بين الماضي و الحاضر



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

journey	رحلة	habits	عادات
vitamins	فيتامينات	changes	تغييرات

Extra vocabulary

healthier	صحية أكثر	weekends	عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	chips	رقائق البطاطس (الشيبسي)
burgers	برجر	sweets	حلويات	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
soda	مياه غازية	a walk	تمشية / نزهة		

Expressions and Phrases

used to	أعتاد أن	all day	طوال اليوم
followed by	يتبعها	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
share	shared	change	changed
bake	baked	grill	grilled
fry	fried	follow	followed
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
wake up	woke up	give	gave



Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box: **SB**

vitamins – football – bodies – soda

- Adam plays with his friends every Saturday.
- Adam drinks a lot of water instead of
- Fruits and vegetables give us important
- Healthy habits are important for our and minds.

Adam's Journey to a Healthier Life

رحلة آدم نحو حياة صحية أكثر

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What is the best way to stay healthy?

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to **share**⁽¹⁾ how my **habits**⁽²⁾ have changed. In the past, I woke up late on **weekends**⁽³⁾ and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning—it makes me feel strong and happy.

I used to watch TV all day, but now I play football with friends every Saturday. Before, I loved **chips**⁽⁴⁾, **burgers**⁽⁵⁾, and sweets. Now, I eat more fruits and vegetables, which give me important **vitamins**⁽⁶⁾.

My favorite snacks are apples, bananas, and carrots. And I drink water instead of soda.

My family's habits changed too—we **grill**⁽⁷⁾ or bake food **instead**⁽⁸⁾ of frying like we used to do in the past, and we eat dinner early, followed by a walk. These changes give me more energy and help me feel better. Have you changed your habits too?



- | | |
|-----|---------------------|
| (1) | يشارك |
| (2) | عادات |
| (3) | عطلات نهاية الأسبوع |
| (4) | رقائق البطاطس |
| (5) | برجر |
| (6) | فيتامينات |
| (7) | يشوي |
| (8) | بدلاً من |



Read again and answer: SB

1 What does Adam do every morning?

.....

2 What is Adam's favorite snack?

.....

3 How did Adam's family cook their food in the past?

.....



Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- 1 Adam exercised a lot in the past. (.....)
- 2 Adam eats more fruits and vegetables now. (.....)
- 3 In the past, Adam woke up early on weekends. (.....)
- 4 Adam's family now eats dinner early and goes for a walk. (.....)



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Adam used to wake up late on weekends and didn't exercise much.
- كان آدم يستيقظ متأخرًا في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع ولم يكن يمارس الرياضة كثيرًا.
- ✓ Now Adam wakes up early and exercises every morning.
- الآن يستيقظ آدم مبكرًا ويمارس الرياضة كل صباح.
- ✓ Adam used to watch TV all day, but now he plays football with friends every Saturday.
- كان آدم يشاهد التلفزيون طوال اليوم، لكنه الآن يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه كل يوم سبت.
- ✓ Adam used to love chips, burgers, and sweets, but now he eats more fruits and vegetables.
- كان آدم يحب رقائق البطاطس والبرجر والحلويات، لكنه الآن يتناول المزيد من الفواكه والخضراوات.
- ✓ Adam's favorite snacks now are apples, bananas, and carrots.
- أصبحت الوجبات الخفيفة المفضلة لآدم الآن هي التفاح والموز والجزر.
- ✓ Adam now drinks water instead of soda.
- يشرب آدم الماء الآن بدلًا من المشروبات الغازية.
- ✓ Adam's family now grills or bakes food instead of frying.
- أصبحت عائلة آدم تشوي أو تخبز الطعام بدلًا من القلي.
- ✓ Adam's family eats dinner early, followed by a walk.
- تتناول عائلة آدم العشاء مبكرًا، ثم تمشي.



Note

- للحدث عن عادات الماضي نستخدم: (inf.) + used to.

e.g. I used to watch TV all day in the past.



Determiners

المحددات

I. Indefinite Articles:

أدوات النكرة:

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.
- تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ies).

e.g. an onion – onions

a mango – mangoes

- ويمكن أن يأتي الجمع غير ذلك مثل:

(a child طفل – children أطفال)

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ولا تجمع ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد مثل: (is - was - has).
- لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

e.g. rice – cheese – water – milk

لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام (a) و (an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود:

a

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن:

e.g. - I have a new book.

- Did you see a monkey?

an

- تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u):

e.g. - She is eating an apple.

- Do you want an orange?



Got it:

Do you have (a) onion?

الإجابة الصحيحة (an) لأن كلمة (onion) كلمة مفرد تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

2. Quantifiers:

محددات الكميات:

اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يعد + some

Affirmative sentence الجملة المثبتة

e.g. I have some apples.

Offer/ Request العرض/ الطلب

e.g. A: Would you like some water?

B: Yes, please.

اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يعد + any

Negative sentence الجملة المنفية

Question

السؤال

e.g. There aren't any apples left.

e.g. Do you have any water?



Got it:

We don't have (some) bread.

الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأنها تأتي في الجملة المنفية.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① I have (a – an – some – any) pencil in my bag.
- ② She bought (some – a – any – an) eggs from the shop.
- ③ Do you have (a – an – some – any) juice?
- ④ Would you like (some – any – an – a) water to drink?
- ⑤ I don't have (some – a – any – an) paper sheets.
- ⑥ I saw (a – an – some – any) elephant at the zoo.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① She ate (a) apple after school.
- ② Are there (some) bananas left?
- ③ I have (any) pencils in my case.
- ④ She didn't eat (some) bread.
- ⑤ She'd like (any) salad before lunch.
- ⑥ She read (an) book about history.

Quick Practice on Determiners

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Is there (some) water in the glass?
- 2 There are (any) figs on the table.
- 3 He wore (a) unusual costume.
- 4 She wants (an) sandwich for lunch.
- 5 There is (any) milk in the fridge.
- 6 Would you like (any) soup?
- 7 She has (a) idea for the project.
- 8 He doesn't want (some) juice.
- 9 They have (any) work to do.
- 10 We watched (a) exciting film.
- 11 I ate (any) rice with chicken.
- 12 There is (an) spider on the wall.
- 13 Did you buy (some) apples?
- 14 We need (an) ruler for math class.
- 15 I can't find (some) sugar.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 there – Are – basket – the – any – in – oranges?
.....
- 2 doesn't – He – drawing – have – pencils – any – for.
.....
- 3 fridge – There – is – in the – juice – fresh – some.
.....
- 4 morning – She – wakes – every – early – up.
.....
- 5 cake – They – delicious – a – baked – yesterday.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I'd like to how I changed my habits.
a) eat b) care c) share d) make
- 2 She early in the morning.
a) grills b) wakes up c) fries d) gives
- 3 Things we do regularly are called our
a) friends b) dinner c) habits d) homework
- 4 We cupcakes for birthdays.
a) follow b) bake c) grill d) fry
- 5 It's unhealthy to eat burgers,, and sweets.
a) fruits b) chips c) vegetables d) chicken
- 6 Fruits and vegetables give us
a) vitamins b) habits c) weekends d) exercise
- 7 My favorite are apples and bananas.
a) games b) meals c) snacks d) sports
- 8 Drink water soda.
a) sure b) instead of c) followed by d) again with
- 9 It's healthier to food instead of frying it.
a) throw b) buy c) grill d) grow
- 10 We sometimes go for a after dinner.
a) meal b) weekend c) walk d) habit

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

walks – exercises – grill – heart

Yara used to wake up late and skip breakfast. Now, she wakes up early and (1) before school. Instead of soda, she drinks fresh juice. Her family stopped frying food, and now they (2) fish and meat. After dinner, they go for (3) together. Yara feels more fit since changing her habits. She plays basketball twice a week with classmates.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Khalid changed his unhealthy habits completely. In the past, he ate burgers daily and stayed up late playing video games. Now, he sleeps early and exercises every morning. Khalid's family stopped frying food, and now mom bakes chicken. They eat dinner at 7 pm. and walk to the park together. Khalid joined a football team and practices every Thursday. These changes made him stronger and improved his grades. His energy lasts all day now, and he feels proud of himself.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) family dinner b) changing bad habits
c) frying food d) football teams
- 2 Khalid eats at 7 am.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snacks

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Khalid's family stop doing?
- 4 How often does Khalid practice football?
- 5 How did these changes help Khalid?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I saw (an) star in the sky last night.
- 2 Manar packed (any) cookies for the trip.
- 3 My brother built (an) sandcastle on the beach.
- 4 There is (any) milk in the fridge.
- 5 What (a) amazing movie!
- 6 I don't have (some) food at home.
- 7 She bought (a) old book from the bookshop.
- 8 Are there (some) sweaters in the shop?
- 9 I need (any) water for my plants.
- 10 Do you have (some) friends at school?

5 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

“My healthy habits”

wake up early – exercise regularly – go for walk



A) Heart and Blood

قلب ودم



Listen, and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

heart	قلب	organs	أعضاء	fist	قبضة اليد
pump	يضخ	oxygen	أكسجين	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood vessels	أوعية دموية	hurt	يؤلم / يجرح

Extra vocabulary

pump	مضخة	cell	خلية	tubes	أنابيب
waste	مخلفات / فضلات	tips	نصائح	powerful (adj.)	قوى
tightly	بقوة / بإحكام	closed (adj.)	مغلق	substances	مواد

Expressions and Phrases

take away	يتخلص من	(be) like	مثل / شبه
keep you alive	يبقيك على قيد الحياة	take care of	يعتنى بـ
get sick	يُصاب بالمرض	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
carry	carried	stay	stayed
Present	Past	Present	Past
keep	kept	hurt	hurt

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

organ	a body part that does a job	جزء من الجسم يقوم بوظيفة
blood vessels	tubes that carry blood through the body	أنابيب تنقل الدم عبر الجسم
fist	hand when it is tightly closed	اليد عندما تكون مغلقة بإحكام
oxygen	a gas that we breathe	غاز نتنفسه
nutrients	substances that give us the energy and help our bodies grow	المواد التي تمدنا بالطاقة وتساعد أجسامنا على النمو

Our Body's Super Pump

المضخة الخارقة في أجسامنا



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

When does the heart beat faster?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important **organs**⁽¹⁾ of our body. It is about the size of your **fist**⁽²⁾. The heart's job is to **pump**⁽³⁾ blood to all parts of the body.

Blood carries oxygen and **nutrients**⁽⁴⁾ to every cell.

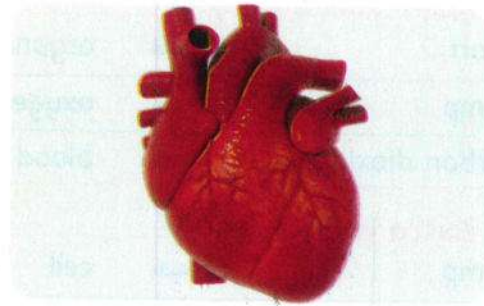
It also takes away waste like carbon dioxide.

The heart pumps blood through **blood vessels**⁽⁵⁾, which are like small tubes.

The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us **alive**⁽⁶⁾. Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy. You can take care of your heart by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking a lot of water.

Also, exercise helps your heart pump better and keeps you from getting sick.

If you follow these **tips**⁽⁷⁾, your heart will stay strong. It may be small, but it is very **powerful**⁽⁸⁾!



- | | |
|-----|----------------|
| (1) | أعضاء |
| (2) | قبضة اليد |
| (3) | يضخ الدم |
| (4) | عناصر غذائية |
| (5) | أوعية دموية |
| (6) | على قيد الحياة |
| (7) | نصائح |
| (8) | قوى |



Read again and answer the questions: SE

1 What does the heart pump into the body?

.....

2 How can we keep our heart healthy?

.....



Read and write T (True) or F (False): SD

- 1 The heart is about the size of your fist. ()
- 2 Blood carries waste products like carbon dioxide. ()
- 3 Water is bad for the heart. ()
- 4 Blood vessels are like large tubes. ()



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The heart is one of the most important organs of our body.
- القلب هو أحد أهم أعضاء جسمنا.
- ✓ The heart's job is to pump blood to all parts of the body.
- وظيفة القلب هي ضخ الدم إلى جميع أجزاء الجسم.
- ✓ Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell.
- يحمل الدم الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية إلى كل خلية.
- ✓ The heart pumps blood through blood vessels, which are like small tubes.
- يضخ القلب الدم عبر الأوعية الدموية التي تشبه الأنابيب الصغيرة.
- ✓ The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive.
- القلب هو عضلة قوية تحافظ على حياتنا.
- ✓ Too much stress can hurt your heart, so it's important to keep it healthy.
- يمكن أن يؤدي الإجهاد الزائد لقلبك، لذا من المهم الحفاظ على صحته.
- ✓ Exercise helps your heart pump better, and keeps you from getting sick.
- تساعد التمارين الرياضية قلبك على الضخ بشكل أفضل وتحميك من المرض.
- ✓ The heart may be small, but it is very powerful!
- قد يكون القلب صغيرًا، لكنه قوى جدًا!



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



leaf

ورقة شجر



feed

يطعم



pot

وعاء / إناء



flag

علم

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

- A **syllable** is a word part with one vowel sound. It can have one or more vowel letters, but only one vowel sound.

المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد فقط، قد يحتوي على أكثر من حرف متحرك ولكنه يحتوي على صوت واحد فقط.

- Words like bread (5 letters) and pot (3 letters) look different, but both have one syllable because they only have one vowel sound.

كلمات مثل bread (5 أحرف) و pot (3 أحرف) تبدو مختلفة ولكن كلاهما يتكون من مقطع صوتي واحد لأنهما يحتويان على صوت متحرك واحد فقط.

e.g. arm, jump, feed, bread

one-syllable words



كلمات ذات مقطع صوتي واحد

run

يجري

tree

شجرة

fish

سمكة

jump

يقفز

hat

قبعة



Listen and put the sounds in order. Then, write the word: SB



f _ l _ ea

leaf



d _ ee _ f



t _ o _ p



f _ l _ g _ a



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Ali's teacher said the heart is very
a) unhealthy b) important c) small d) big
- 2 The heart blood to the whole body.
a) wastes b) helps c) pumps d) hurts
- 3 It takes away bad things like
a) oxygen b) nutrients c) blood d) carbon dioxide
- 4 Ali will eat good food and play to keep his heart strong.
a) tennis b) football c) video games d) chess

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The pumps the blood to the body.
a) muscle b) organ c) heart d) oxygen
- 2 The heart is about the size of your
a) head b) leg c) lung d) fist
- 3 Blood carries and nutrients to every cell.
a) carbon dioxide b) oxygen c) vessels d) organs
- 4 Too much can hurt your heart.
a) stress b) blood c) tips d) water
- 5 "....." are the substances that give us energy and help our bodies grow.
a) Fist b) Nutrients c) Vessels d) Pump

Super Question ?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vessels – harm – tips – nutrients

The heart is an important organ about the size of your fist. It pumps blood through blood (1) to all body parts. This strong muscle keeps us alive. Stress can (2) the heart. To protect it, you must eat well, sleep enough, and drink water. Exercise helps your heart pump better. Follow these (3) to keep your heart healthy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara learned about her amazing heart. It works day and night pumping blood through tiny tubes. The blood brings oxygen to all parts of her body. Sara knows stress can hurt her heart. Now, she eats fruits, drinks water, and sleeps early. Every morning, Sara exercises to make her heart pump better. Her doctor said these good habits keep the heart strong. Sara tells her family to take care of their hearts, too. Heart may be small, but it is very powerful!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) Sara's family b) the heart c) stress d) doctors
- 2 The underlined word "tiny" means very
 a) big b) large c) huge d) very small

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does the heart do?

- 4 What does the blood bring to the parts of the body?

- 5 How does Sara make her heart pump better?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we have an amazing body

- 2 can exercise keep your heart healthy

6 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

"How do good habits protect your heart?" 

good food – exercise daily – stay strong





Lessons 4 and 5



Writing

Life savers in action منقذو الحياة أثناء العمل



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

healthcare	رعاية صحية	pharmacists	صيدالة	paramedics	مسعفون
heroes	أبطال	diagnose	يشخص	diseases	أمراض / أوبئة

Extra vocabulary

knowledge	معرفة	skills	مهارات	patients	مرضى
illnesses	أمراض	treatment	علاج	support	دعم
medicine	دواء	advice	نصيحة	emergencies	حالات طوارئ
harmful (adj.)	ضار	kindness	لطف	respect	احترام

Expressions and Phrases

spend their lives	يقضون حياتهم	day and night	ليلاً ونهاراً
care for	يرعى / يعتنى بـ	make sure	يتأكدون
around the clock	على مدار الساعة	on the spot	على الفور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
treat يعالج	treated	check يفحص	checked
diagnose يشخص	diagnosed	provide يقدم / يوفر	provided
receive يستقبل	received	respond يستجيب	responded
care يرعى	cared	encourage يشجع	encouraged

Definitions

around the clock	to work for long hours without much rest أن تعمل لساعات طويلة دون راحة وفيرة
on the spot	to help immediately أن تساعد على الفور
diagnose	to identify the cause of a problem or illness أن تحدد سبب المشكلة أو المرض

Healthcare Heros أبطال الرعاية الصحية

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Healthcare⁽¹⁾ workers—like doctors, nurses, pharmacists⁽²⁾, and paramedics⁽³⁾ are real-life heroes who spend their lives helping others. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses⁽⁴⁾. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose⁽⁵⁾ diseases, and provide treatments⁽⁶⁾. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients. Pharmacists play a very important role, too. They make sure patients⁽⁷⁾ receive the correct medicine⁽⁸⁾ and give advice⁽⁹⁾ on how to use it safely. Paramedics respond⁽¹⁰⁾ quickly in emergencies⁽¹¹⁾. They give help on the spot and take patients safely to hospitals. Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives as they encourage⁽¹²⁾ us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful⁽¹³⁾ habits. These heroes work long hours with kindness⁽¹⁴⁾. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them respect⁽¹⁵⁾. Healthcare workers are really our everyday heroes!



- | | |
|------|----------------|
| (1) | الرعاية الصحية |
| (2) | الصيدلة |
| (3) | المسعفون |
| (4) | الأمراض |
| (5) | يشخص |
| (6) | علاج |
| (7) | المرضى |
| (8) | الدواء |
| (9) | نصيحة |
| (10) | يستجيب |
| (11) | حالات الطوارئ |
| (12) | يشجع |
| (13) | ضارة |
| (14) | اللطف |
| (15) | الاحترام |



Read again and answer the questions: SB

1 Who are the healthcare workers mentioned as everyday heroes?

.....

2 What do doctors do to help patients stay healthy?

.....

3 When do paramedics provide urgent help to patients?

.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

✓ Healthcare workers like doctors and nurses are real-life heroes.

- العاملين في مجال الرعاية الصحية مثل الأطباء والممرضين هم أبطال حقيقيون في الحياة.

✓ Doctors check patients and provide treatments.

- يقوم الأطباء بفحص المرضى وتقديم العلاج لهم.

✓ Nurses give care and support to patients day and night.

- تقدم الممرضات الرعاية والدعم للمرضى ليلاً ونهاراً.

✓ Pharmacists give patients the correct medicine.

- يضمن الصيادلة حصول المرضى على الدواء الصحيح.

✓ Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies.

- يستجيب المسعفون بسرعة في حالات الطوارئ.

✓ Healthcare workers encourage healthy habits like doing sports.

- يشجع العاملون في مجال الرعاية الصحية على العادات الصحية مثل ممارسة الرياضة.

✓ These heroes work long hours.

- يعمل هؤلاء الأبطال لساعات طويلة.

✓ We should thank healthcare workers by showing respect.

- يجب أن نشكر العاملين في مجال الرعاية الصحية من خلال إظهار الاحترام لهم.

Tips!

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself: عندما تكتب نصًا واقعيًا، اسأل نفسك:

- * Is the information true? هل المعلومات صحيحة؟
- * Did I make anything up? هل اختلقت شيئًا؟
- * Is my source reliable? هل مصدرى موثوق؟

Non-fiction writing should include: ينبغي أن تتضمن الكتابة الواقعية ما يلي:

- | | | | |
|---|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 An introductory sentence
جملة أفتتاحية | 2 Details that are true
تفاصيل كلها حقيقة | 3 Adjectives
صفات | 4 A closing sentence
جملة ختامية |
|---|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|

e.g.

- An introductory sentence:

➡ My neighbor, Selim, is a doctor at our local hospital.

- Details that are true

➡ He wears a white coat and carries a stethoscope around his neck.

- Adjectives

➡ white, big, kind

- A closing sentence

➡ The work is tiring, but he's proud to be a doctor.



Think and create

A poster ملصق

Elements of a good poster:

Elements of a Good Poster are...

- 1 A clear title (to grab the attention)
- 2 Organized steps (to explain)
- 3 Photos or drawings (to illustrate)

عناصر الملصق الجيد هي....

١. عنوان واضح (لجذب الانتباه).

٢. خطوات منظمة (للشرح)

٣. صور أو رسومات (للتوضيح)

Photos / Drawings صور / رسومات

Title عنوان



1. Wash your hands before and after eating.
اغسل يديك قبل وبعد الأكل.



2. Eat fruits and vegetables regularly.
تناول الفاكهة والخضروات بانتظام.



3. Drink enough water daily.
اشرب كمية كافية من الماء يوميًا.



6. Brush your teeth daily with toothpaste.
قم بتنظيف أسنانك يوميًا باستخدام معجون الأسنان.

Stay Healthy

ابقِ بصحة جيدة



4. Exercise regularly.
تمرّن بانتظام.



5. Sleep early and get enough rest.
نم مبكرًا والحصول على قسط كافٍ من الراحة.

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ali has good now.
a) habits b) posters c) friends d) paintings
- 2 work hard to help sick people.
a) Teachers b) Nurses c) Cleaners d) Engineers
- 3 Ali thanks all workers.
a) street b) school c) healthcare d) factory
- 4 Ali's healthy habits make him
a) sad b) unhealthy c) weak d) strong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Doctors help people and treat
a) medicine b) illnesses c) sick d) healthcare
- 2 Nurses work around the clock to give to patients.
a) tickets b) money c) support d) treatments
- 3 To diagnose means to **SB**
a) treat patients b) identify the cause of illness
c) identify emergency d) transport patients
- 4 make sure patients receive the correct medicine.
a) Nurses b) Doctors c) Paramedics d) Pharmacists
- 5 Paramedics quickly in emergencies.
a) check b) respond c) receive d) diagnose
- 6 Doctors, nurses, and paramedics are workers. **Super Question ?**
a) healthcare b) dangerous c) endangered d) harmful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medicine – check – patients – kindness

When we feel sick, we go to the hospital. There are real-life heroes there. Doctors (1) people's health and they find treatments. Nurses work day and night. They help doctors and care for (2) Pharmacists make sure patients get the correct (3) Paramedics help in emergencies. They help on the spot and save lives. Their jobs may be hard, but they are all important to us.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Samira's teacher talked about healthcare workers at school today. She told her students that doctors diagnose illnesses and nurses provide care all day. Pharmacists give correct medicine. Paramedics help quickly in emergencies. These heroes work with kindness around the clock to make sure we stay healthy. Samira's mom is a nurse. She helps many patients. Samira wants to say thank you. She draws a colorful card for healthcare workers and writes, "Thank you for spending your lives helping others. You are real-life heroes!"

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Samira's talked about healthcare workers.
a) mom b) friend c) teacher d) sister
- 2 The underlined word "patients" means people.
a) sick b) fit c) healthy d) active

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do doctors do?
- 4 Who help quickly in emergencies?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 wash your hands before eating
.....

- 2 where do paramedics work
.....

6 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My friend the pharmacist"

Where does he/she work? What does he/she wear for work? How does he/she help people?



Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

sports	رياضة	football	كرة القدم
muscles	عضلات	swimming	سباحة
lungs	رئتان	fit	لائق بدنياً
tired	متعب	exercise / exercising	تمرين
mental health	الصحة العقلية	stressed	متوتر
important	مهم	energy	طاقة
bones	عظام	stress	التوتر / القلق
regularly	بانتظام	normal	طبيعي

Lesson (2)

journey	رحلة	habits	عادات
vitamins	فيتامينات	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
weekends	عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	chips	رقائق البطاطس (الشيبسي)
sweets	حلويات	soda	مياه غازية
burgers	برجر	a walk	تمشية / نزهة

Lesson (3)

heart	قلب	organs	أعضاء
fist	قبضة اليد	oxygen	أكسجين
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
blood vessels	أوعية دموية	hurt	يؤلم / يجرح
cell	خلية	tubes	أنابيب
waste	فضلات	powerful	قوي

Lessons (4 and 5)

healthcare	رعاية صحية	heroes	أبطال
doctors	أطباء	pharmacists	صيادلة
paramedics	مسعفون	real-life	حقيقي
patients	مرضى	diseases / illnesses	أمراض
treatment	علاج	support	دعم
medicine	دواء	emergencies	حالات طوارئ
harmful	ضار	care	رعاية
respect	احترام	diagnose	يشخص

Language in Use

Determiners (a / an / some / any)

a

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن:

e.g. - a book - a monkey

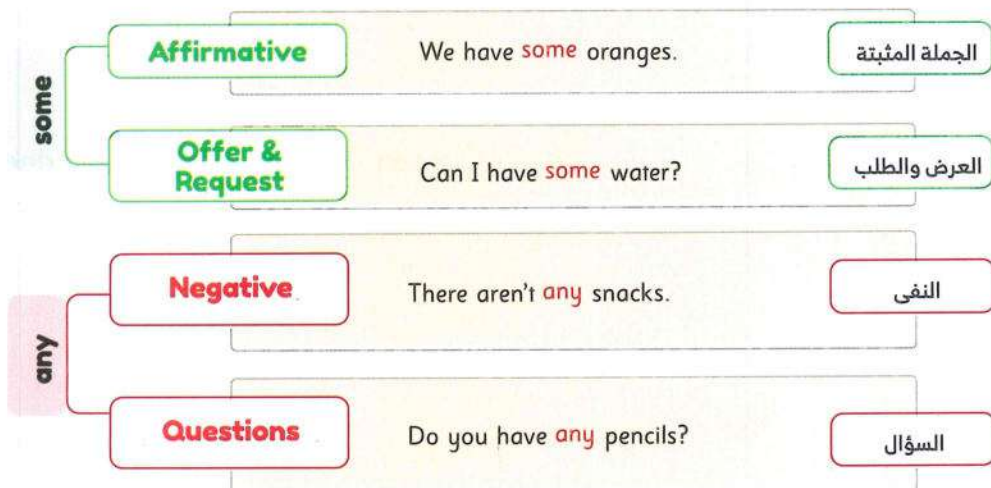
an

تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u):

e.g. - an onion - an egg

• Some & Any:

مع الاسم المعدود الجمع أو الاسم غير المعدود:



Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
football	رياضات
swimming	عضلات
fit	متعب
stressed	الصحة العقلية
energy	تمرين

Lesson 2

journey	حلويات
habits	وجبات خفيفة
vitamins	عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
healthier	مياه غازية
chips	تمشية / نزهة

Lesson 3

stress	قلب
fist	أكسجين
carbon dioxide	أوعية دموية
waste	أعضاء
tubes	مغذيات

Lessons 4 and 5

healthcare	صيانة
heroes	أطباء
patients	مسعفون
medicine	أمراض
emergencies	علاج

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
provide	.....	.....	shared
exercise	.....	.....	baked
.....	diagnosed	grill	.....
carry	.....	stay	.....
.....	hurt	respond	.....

"لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب".

Unit 2

WRITING TIME



تجميعه لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات:

How to write about your habits in the past and now.

- I'd like to share how my habits changed.
- In the past + عادة سلبية كنت تقوم بها في الماضي.
- Now, + عادة صحية تقوم بها الآن.
- I used to + عادة سلبية كنت تقوم بها سابقًا.
- But now, + عادات صحية تقوم بها الآن.
- These changes help me feel better.

"My habits now and in the past"

Hi! I'm Ola. I'd like to share how my habits changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning. I used to watch TV all day. But now, I play football with friends every Saturday. These changes help me feel better.

How to write a non-fiction text about healthcare workers.

- Write an introductory sentence. اكتب جملة افتتاحية.
- Write details that are all true. اكتب تفاصيل تكون كلها حقيقية.
- Use adjectives to describe things like appearance and work. استخدم الصفات لوصف أشياء مثل المظهر والعمل.
- Write a closing sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

"Non-fiction text about healthcare workers"

My best friend Omar is a pharmacist. He works in the city's hospital. He wears a white coat at work. He gives patients the correct medicine. He tells them how to use it safely. He works day and night and uses his knowledge to help people.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the words to their definitions:

1 fit

2 mental health

3 stressed

4 lungs

5 muscles

a. how you feel and think

b. the parts of your body that help you move

c. the organs in your chest that help you breathe

d. feeling unhappy or tired

e. being healthy and strong because you exercise

2 Read and correct the mistake:

1 I have **an** watermelon.

(.....)

2 There is **any** milk in the fridge.

(.....)

3 She ate **a** apple yesterday.

(.....)

4 I don't have **some** food at home.

(.....)

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 Is there orange juice left in the fridge?

a) a

b) an

c) any

d) some

2 She bought bottle of water.

a) a

b) an

c) some

d) any

3 Omar will buy apples for the picnic.

a) a

b) some

c) any

d) an

4 Match the words to their definitions:

1 organ

2 blood vessels

3 fist

4 oxygen

5 nutrients

a. tubes that carry blood through the body

b. substances that give us energy and help our bodies grow

c. a body part that does a job

d. a gas that we breathe

e. a hand when it is tightly closed



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 In the past, Habiba loved and burgers.
a) rice b) salad c) fish d) chips
- 2 Now she eats more and vegetables.
a) chicken b) burgers c) fruit d) bread
- 3 Habiba drinks a lot of to stay fresh.
a) soda b) water c) juice d) milk
- 4 All these changes make Habiba feel
a) better b) safer c) weaker d) bigger



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 A is the hand when it's tightly closed.
a) guest b) head c) fist d) foot
- 2 Doctors and nurses work with
a) students b) patients c) players d) customers
- 3 Being means being strong and healthy.
a) tired b) fit c) stressed d) worried

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

vessels – lungs – organs – pump

We have an amazing body. The heart is one of the most important (1) of our body. It is about the size of your fist. The heart's job is to (2) blood to all parts of the body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell. It also takes away waste like carbon dioxide. The heart pumps blood through blood (3), which are like small tubes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Healthcare workers work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses. Doctors use their knowledge and skills to check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care

for patients. Pharmacists play a very important role, too. They make sure patients receive the correct medicine and give advice on how to use it safely. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies. They give help on the spot and take patients safely to hospitals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Healthcare workers keep people and treat illnesses.
a) tired b) rich c) smart d) healthy
- 2 To work "around the clock" means to work
a) next to a clock b) wearing a watch c) all the time d) looking at the clock

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who diagnose diseases?
- 4 How do nurses help?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 makes – Playing – sports – heart – your – strong.
- 2 before – Try – eating – fruit – exercise – you.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I need (a) egg for the cake.
- 2 Is there (some) bread in the basket?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how can I stay healthy
- 2 he plays football every sunday.

8 Write a text about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My journey to a healthier life"
on weekends – every morning





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4

- 1 Omar wants to be a when he grows up.
a) teacher b) nurse c) doctor d) firefighter
- 2 Doctors work in
a) hospitals b) offices c) schools d) parks
- 3 They help by diagnosing illnesses and providing treatments.
a) animals b) patients c) relatives d) workers
- 4 Doctors help us live lives.
a) longer b) shorter c) healthier d) happier



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Fruits and vegetables give us
a) blood b) vitamins c) sports d) carbon dioxide
- 2 Your help you breathe.
a) fist b) hands c) lungs d) muscles
- 3 give us energy that helps our body grow.
a) Carbon dioxide b) Nutrients c) Paramedics d) Emergencies

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

exercise – fit – heart – normal

Playing sports is important. If you play football, it makes your (1) stronger. It also helps your muscles grow. Swimming is also good. It makes your lungs strong. It's (2) if you feel tired when you play sports. If this happens, try eating some bananas before you (3) Sports also help your mental health.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

The heart is a strong muscle that keeps us alive. It's an important **organ** that pumps blood around the body. This blood carries oxygen and nutrients to every cell. You should keep your heart healthy by eating good food, sleeping well, and drinking

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about
 a) being alive b) having a healthy heart
 c) stress d) doing exercise
- 2** An "organ" is a body that has a job to do.
 a) cell b) vessel c) part d) tube

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does the heart do?
- 4 How can you have a healthy heart?
- 5 Why should you stay away from stress?



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



- 1 helps – Exercise – lose – you – weight.
- 2 through – blood – The heart – blood vessels – pumps.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



- 1 Can I have (a) apple?
2 Mom bought (any) new dresses.

7 Punctuate the following:



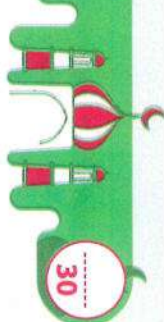
- 1 when do you exercise
- 2 noha's favorite snacks are bananas and apples

8 Write a text about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

“Healthcare workers”

Who are healthcare workers? – How do they help people?





A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 This is my (father – brother – friend – cousin) Hassan.
- 2 He is a (paramedic – teacher – nurse – pharmacist).
- 3 Hassan gives help on the (run – spot – coat – boat).

4.5

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

tired – exercise – sports – stay

A : Mom, why is it important to play (1)..... ?

B : It helps us (2)..... healthy.

A : But sometimes I get (3)..... when I play sports.

B : That's normal. Try eating some fruits before you (4)..... .

8

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

2.5

To stay healthy, follow these six important habits. First, always wash your hands before and after eating. Second, eat fruits and vegetables every day to give you vitamins. Third, drink plenty of water to stay fresh. Fourth, exercise regularly to keep your body strong. Fifth, sleep early and get enough rest to feel energetic. Sixth, brush your teeth daily with toothpaste for a bright smile. These simple habits will help you to stay active and avoid sickness.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why should you eat fruits and vegetables every day?
- 2 How can exercise help you stay fit?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Always wash your hands before (walking – eating – sleeping – exercising).
- 4 Drink plenty of (soda – cola – water – tea) to stay fresh.
- 5 The text is about (staying healthy – enough sleep – sickness – a toothpaste).

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 When someone is (fit – healthy – happy – stressed), he feels tired and unhappy.
- 2 (Doctors – Paramedics – Nurses – Teachers) respond in emergencies and help on the spot.
- 3 We grill food instead of (baking – growing – buying – frying) it.
- 4 Mona didn't give me (some – any – a – an) bags.
- 5 You still have (any – some – an – a) water left in the bottle.

5

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

- 1 an – We – body – have – amazing.
- 2 helps – Exercise – sleep – you – better.
- 3 about – How – for – going – together – a walk?
- 4 helps – Playing – sports – whole – your – body.
- 5 have – She – didn't – food – at home – any.

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 There are many water along the Nile.
a) foods b) weeds c) insects d) rats
- 2 Some animals hide under rocks to stay in the
a) heat b) cool c) shade d) dry
- 3 To make pasta, you need to the water.
a) boil b) cool c) chop d) fry
- 4 Lizards on insects.
a) breathe b) dream c) feed d) sleep
- 5 Doctors have an important, caring for the patients.
a) door b) way c) game d) role
- 6 Koshari is a/an food.
a) traditional b) international c) Asian d) Europe
- 7 People should work together to the Nile.
a) respect b) protect c) remove d) hunt
- 8 In good and bad weather, animals learn to
a) survive b) protect c) balance d) try
- 9 Nour is She doesn't like sharing her toys.
a) selfish b) nice c) smart d) weak
- 10 Farmers grow near the Nile.
a) pots b) crops c) cups d) branches

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

cold – strong – owls – rock

There are plenty of animals that live in the desert. The weather is hot and dry. Camels eat plants to stay (1)..... . Some animals, like (2)....., come out at night. Other animals stay under a (3)..... to stay cool during the day.

B

boils – simple – onions – crunchy

Nagwa likes making Koshari. It is her favorite traditional food. First, she (1)..... the water to make pasta and cooks the rice. Then, she makes the crispy (2)..... by slicing them thinly. She fries them until they are brown and (3)..... .

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 I (go rarely) to school on foot.
- 2 Reem does her homework every day after school. She (rarely) does her homework after school.
- 3 We (always) make cake, just one time a month.
- 4 Hossam doesn't ever take the car. He (never) takes the bus.
- 5 It (usually) rains in the summer.
- 6 Snakes (always) eat plants.
- 7 We (usually) have pizza for dinner. Just once a week!
- 8 I (often) have cereal for breakfast. I don't like it!
- 9 He (always) goes swimming. He can't swim!
- 10 Desert animals (usually) find food. It's not easy to find food.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Playing sports keeps your heart
a) strong b) weak c) quick d) slow
- 2 Karim practices football to increase his energy and helps his muscles
a) break b) give c) grow d) provide
- 3 We should stress to help our mental health.
a) let b) increase c) help d) reduce
- 4 Our pumps blood to our body.
a) heart b) brain c) cell d) organ
- 5 Blood carries and nutrients to every cell.
a) food b) drink c) oxygen d) water
- 6 Blood vessels are small
a) pot b) bowls c) tubes d) cups
- 7 Our blood carries like carbon dioxide.
a) gas b) energy c) water d) food

- 8 Doctors diseases and provide treatment for patients.
 a) give b) make c) diagnose d) remove
- 9 Nurses work around the to support patients.
 a) wrist b) watch c) hour d) clock
- 10 The helped Reem on the spot when she fell.
 a) paramedics b) engineers c) patients d) firefighters

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

muscles – slow – fit – reduces

Hany practices football three times a week. It helps his (1)..... grow and increases energy. Before going to the club, he eats fruits to give him energy. Football helps Hany stay (2)..... . It is also good for his mental health and (3)..... stress.

B

heart – pumps – stress – happy

Today we learned about organs. The (1)..... plays an important role in our body. It (2)..... blood and carries oxygen and nutrition to every cell. It also carries waste, like carbon dioxide. Too much (3)..... can hurt your heart. That's why we need to eat good food and exercise to stay fit.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Can I have (any) water?
- 2 The heart is (a) organ in our body.
- 3 We don't have (some) milk.
- 4 Do you have (some) cake left?
- 5 I need (an) new notebook.
- 6 Are there (some) girls in the football team?
- 7 Here, have (any) nuts.
- 8 There isn't (some) food left. They ate all of it.
- 9 (A) apple a day keeps the doctor away.
- 10 Mayar eats two (egg) in the morning.

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Exercise makes our bones
a) strong b) weak c) big d) small
- 2 The diagnosed her disease and gave her medicine.
a) nurse b) doctor c) patient d) engineer
- 3 Hadeer works hard. She works the clock to do her job.
a) over b) under c) in d) around
- 4 The king wears a big on his head.
a) crown b) hat c) scarf d) cap
- 5 Camels can without food for a long time.
a) respect b) keep c) survive d) sleep

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 Swimming – lungs – makes – stronger – our.
.....

- 2 helps – Exercise – weight – us – lose.
.....

- 3 much – Too – stress – hurt – heart – your – can.
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 We don't have (some) bread.
- 2 Would you like (a) juice?
- 3 Youssef is eating (an) mango.
- 4 Nada (wakes rarely) up early in the morning.
- 5 Eman (usually) eats fast food. She doesn't like it.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The doctor advised me to smoking to help my health get better.
a) reduce b) add c) increase d) do
- 2 Our heart carries oxygen and to every cell.
a) air b) water c) nutrients d) sweets
- 3 Omar was so He didn't want to give his toys to anyone. **SB**
a) careful b) selfish c) old d) cold
- 4 The weather was very hot, so Amira rested under a tree in the
a) heat b) shade c) cool d) trees
- 5 We should for our plants.
a) ignore b) respect c) care d) play

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

paramedics – diagnosed – boiled – healthcare

Yesterday, our neighbor was injured badly. We called an ambulance and the (1)..... were quick to give help on the spot. They took him to the hospital and the doctor (2)..... his disease. The nurses worked around the clock to give him support. They are truly (3)..... heroes.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 There aren't (some) boys in the class.
- 2 I'm going to the market to buy (any) fruit.
- 3 Hala (never) plays tennis. She likes playing it.
- 4 I don't go to the club. I (always) go there.
- 5 She doesn't have (some) money.



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

rice – Koshari – Then – fry

Mona : What's your favorite recipe, Nour?

Nour : I love making (1)

Mona : How do you make it?

Nour : First, I prepare the (2)

Mona : (3), what do you do?

Nour : I make the sauce and (4) the onions.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 My mom collects (any – an – some) fresh eggs every day.
- 2 We don't have (some – any – a) milk in the fridge.
- 3 I (never – always – rarely) watch TV. I watch it every day.
- 4 Sara (always helps – helps always – always) her mom.
- 5 Adel (never – usually – always) comes on time. He is always late.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 protect – We – should – planet - our.

.....

2 traditional – Hana – likes – food.

.....

3 illnesses - and - diagnose – Doctors – diseases.

.....

4 give – help – spot – The paramedics – the – on.

.....

5 our – good – Sleeping – is – health – mental – for.

.....



MODULE 2

Unit 3 : When Nature Changes

Unit 4 : My Community

Unit

3

When Nature Changes

عندما تتغير الطبيعة



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- answer questions based on conversations about environmental changes. - يجيب عن أسئلة بناءً على محادثات حول التغيرات البيئية.
- identify vocabulary related to weather in a listening text. - يحدد المفردات المتعلقة بالطقس في نص استماع.

Speaking:

- describe different weather conditions. - يصف حالات الطقس المختلفة.
- talk about past events using the past simple tense. - يتحدث عن أحداث في الماضي باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط.
- recognize and repeat vowel digraph in common words. - يتعرف على مجموعات الحروف المتحركة المتجاورة وتكرارها في الكلمات الشائعة.

Reading:

- answer comprehension questions on extreme weather conditions. - يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم حول حالات الطقس القاسية.
- identify elements (characters and moral) in a fictional story. - يحدد عناصر القصة الخيالية (الشخصيات والدرس الأخلاقي).

Writing:

- complete sentences using the past simple tense correctly. - يكمل الجمل باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط بشكل صحيح.
- write a fiction story. - يكتب قصة خيالية.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	flood	فيضان	wildfire	حرائق الغابات
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	drought	جفاف	heat wave	موجة حارة

Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	lightning	برق	dust	تراب
temperature	درجة الحرارة	terrible (adj.)	فظيع / مرعب	news	أخبار
crops	محاصيل	land	أرض	stuck (adj.)	عالق
damaged (adj.)	تالف / متضرر	rain	مطر	awful (adj.)	فظيع
dry (adj.)	جاف	the U.S.A.	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	close (adj.)	قريب
mountains	جبال	winds	رياح	planet	كوكب

Expressions and Phrases

hear about	يسمع عن	on the news	في الأخبار	get stuck	يعلق أو يتعطل
look scary	يبدو مخيفاً	What a pity!	يا للأسف!	stay safe	البقاء آمناً

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال منتظمة Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
cover	covered	flood	flooded
breathe	breathed	burn	burned
أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular verbs			
Present	Past	Present	Past
hear	heard	spread	spread
get	got	strike	struck

Definitions

wildfire	burns through forests and homes	الحرائق في الغابات والمنازل
thunderstorm	when a thunderstorm happens, children are afraid of the lightning	عندما تحدث عاصفة رعدية، يخاف الأطفال من البرق
sandstorm	is a severe wind that carries sand and dust through the air, making it hard to breathe	هي رياح شديدة تحمل الرمال والغبار في الهواء، مما يجعل التنفس صعباً
flood	when there's too much water covering dry land	يحدث عندما يكون هناك الكثير من الماء يغطي الأرض الجافة
heat wave	happens when the temperature is dangerously high for days	تحدث عندما تكون درجة الحرارة مرتفعة بشكل خطير لعدة أيام
drought	happens when there is no rain for a long time	يحدث عندما لا يوجد مطر لفترة طويلة

When Nature Strikes!

عندما تغضب الطبيعة!



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Mazen and Dina are talking about extreme weather. مازن ودينا يتحدثان عن الطقس القاسي.



Mazen

Dina, did you hear about the flood in our city last week? It was terrible.

دينا، هل سمعت عن الفيضان في مدينتنا الأسبوع الماضي؟ لقد كان فظيلاً.

Yes, Mazen! I saw it on the news. The water covered the streets, and many cars got stuck. It looked scary.

نعم يا مازن! رأيته في الأخبار. غطى الماء الشوارع، وعلقت العديد من السيارات. بدا الأمر مخيفاً.



Dina



Mazen

Yes, my uncle's house was damaged. The water flooded his living room, and he had to stay with us for a few days.

نعم، لقد تضرر منزل عمي. غمر الماء غرفة المعيشة، واضطر إلى أن يقيم معنا لبضعة أيام.

That's so sad. I hope he's okay now. Floods are terrible. And now there's a drought — no rain in China for months! Farmers can't grow crops because there's no water.

هذا محزن جداً. أمل أن يكون بخير الآن. الفيضانات مرعبة، والآن هناك جفاف — لا أمطار في الصين منذ شهور! لا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة المحاصيل لأنه لا يوجد ماء.



Dina



Mazen

Yes, droughts are awful! The land gets so dry that animals can't find water. And I heard that a wildfire is spreading in the forest in the U.S.A.

نعم، الجفاف شيء فظيع! تصبح الأرض جافة لدرجة أن الحيوانات لا تجد ماءً. وسمعت أن حريق غابات ينتشر في الغابة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Oh no! Is it close to the mountains?

يا إلهي! هل هو قريب من الجبال؟



Dina



Mazen

Yes, and it spreads quickly because it's dry there, and the winds are so strong. Sadly, many trees burned down, and animals lost their homes.

نعم، وهو ينتشر بسرعة لأن الجو جاف هناك، والرياح قوية جداً. للأسف، احترقت الكثير من الأشجار، وفقدت الحيوانات بيوتها.



Dina

What a pity! Let's learn more about how we can stay safe and help our planet.

يا للأسف! دعنا نتعلم المزيد عن كيف نبقي آمنين ونساعد كوكبنا.



Read again and Answer: SB

- ① What happened in Mazen and Dina's city last week?
- ② How did the flood affect Mazen's uncle?
- ③ Why can't farmers grow food in the U.S.A?
- ④ What can Mazen and Dina do to help the planet?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ There was a terrible flood in the city last week. كان هناك فيضان رهيب في المدينة الأسبوع الماضي.
- ✓ The water covered the streets and many cars got stuck. غطى الماء الشوارع وعلقت العديد من السيارات.
- ✓ Mazen's uncle's house was damaged and he had to stay with them. تضرر منزل عم مازن واضطر إلى أن يقيم معهم.
- ✓ Now, there's a drought — no rain in China for months! الآن هناك جفاف — لم تهطل الأمطار في الصين منذ شهوراً!
- ✓ Farmers can't grow crops and animals can't find water. لا يستطيع المزارعون زراعة المحاصيل ولا تجد الحيوانات ماءً.
- ✓ Mazen heard that a wildfire was spreading in the forest in the U.S.A. سمع مازن أن حريق الغابات ينتشر في إحدى الغابات في أمريكا.
- ✓ The fire spreads quickly because the winds are strong, and many animals have lost their homes. ينتشر الحريق بسرعة لأن الرياح قوية، وقد فقدت العديد من الحيوانات منازلها.
- ✓ Dina and Mazen want to learn how to stay safe and help the planet. دينا ومازن يريدان أن يتعلما كيف يبقيان آمنين ويساعدان الكوكب.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① A (heat wave – drought – flood – wildfire) is when there's too much water covering dry land.
- ② When there is a (wildfire – sandstorm – forest – heat wave), people drink lots of water and stay indoors to avoid the heat.
- ③ During a (thunderstorm – drought – heat wave – wildfire), you can see lightning in the sky and hear loud thunder.
- ④ A (drought – flood – sandstorm – thunderstorm) makes the land very dry and crops don't grow well.
- ⑤ The car was badly (stuck – spread – damaged – dried) after the accident.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Last week, there was a in our town.
a) thunderstorm b) fire c) flood d) sandstorm
- 2 The were flooded and cars got stuck.
a) schools b) streets c) farms d) houses
- 3 My uncle's was damaged.
a) car b) house c) shop d) farm
- 4 Now, there is a
a) thunderstorm b) heat wave c) sandstorm d) drought

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.
a) stuck b) moved c) stayed d) cooked
- 2 The wildfire quickly in the forest.
a) damaged b) flew c) spread d) climbed
- 3 I heard on the that there was a bad storm in the village.
a) wildfire b) dust c) rain d) news
- 4 Ayman's house was after the storm hit it.
a) amazing b) opened c) damaged d) painted
- 5 To save our, we must keep it clean.
a) toy b) family c) meal d) planet
- 6 My house is very to the school. I walk there every day.
a) damaged b) close c) awful d) dry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sandstorm – lightning – drought – heat wave

My name is Yaseen. Last month, I saw a strong (1) in the desert. The wind carried dust and sand, and it was hard to see. Last week, there was a big flood in my town and water covered the streets and houses. Now, there is a (2) It's been very hot all week! I hope it rains soon, or else the farms will suffer from (3) and the crops will die.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Mazen and Dina are talking about big problems caused by nature. There was a big flood in Mazen's city last week. The streets were full of water and cars couldn't move. His uncle's house was damaged. Dina tells Mazen about a drought in China. There has been no rain for many months. The land is very dry and animals can't find water. Mazen says there is a wildfire in a forest in the U.S.A. Trees and homes are burning. *Natural disasters are dangerous, and people must learn how to stay safe.

*الكوارث الطبيعية

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The flood in Mazen's city made the streets full of
a) sand b) cars c) water d) trees
- 2 A drought means there is no
a) land b) rain c) sun d) fire

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What happened to Mazen's uncle's house?
- 4 Where is the drought that Dina talks about?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 it – to – mountains – Is – close – the?
.....
- 2 were – The – so – strong – winds – yesterday.
.....
- 3 city – hear – the – Did – about – you – flood – in our? Super Question ?
.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Weather problems"

flood – damaged – drought





Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	rich soil	تربة خصبة/غنية	basins	أحواض
enough rain	أمطار كافية	mud bricks	الطوب اللبن		

Extra vocabulary

farming	الزراعة	possible (adj.)	ممكّن/مستطاع	problems	مشاكل
canals	قنوات مائية	fields	حقول	low (adj.)	منخفض
irrigation systems	نظم الري	Khamasin	رياح الخماسين	thick (adj.)	سميك
modern (adj.)	حديث/معاصر	tools	أدوات		

Expressions and Phrases

even in the desert	حتى فى الصحراء	strong, hot winds with sand	رياح قوية وساخنة مع الرمال	It is hard to see ...	من الصعب أن نرى ...
protect ... from	يحمى ... من	find smart ways to survive	يجد طرقاً ذكية للبقاء على قيد الحياة	work hard	يعمل بجد

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stop	stopped	control	controlled
happen	happened	solve	solved
call	called	survive	survived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
give	gave	grow	grew
bring	brought	build	built
become	became	find	found



The Weather in Ancient Egypt الطقس في مصر القديمة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

Do you think the weather was different in Ancient Egypt?

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming **possible**⁽¹⁾, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and **rich soil**⁽²⁾, which helped **crops**⁽³⁾ grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.

Floods:

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and damaged farms. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and **basins**⁽⁴⁾ to control the water and spread it over their fields.

Droughts:

Droughts **happened**⁽⁵⁾ when there was not **enough rain**⁽⁶⁾. The Nile's water became **low**⁽⁷⁾, and the land became dry. Crops could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made **irrigation systems**⁽⁸⁾ to bring water to their fields.

Sandstorms:

Sandstorms, called **Khamasin**⁽⁹⁾, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe. People stayed inside to stay safe. They built their homes with thick **mud bricks**⁽¹⁰⁾ to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern **machines**⁽¹¹⁾, but they found smart ways to **survive**⁽¹²⁾. They worked hard, used simple **tools**⁽¹³⁾, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.

(1) ممكن/مستطاع

(2) تربة خصبة

(3) محاصيل

(4) أحواض

(5) يحدث

(6) أمطار كافية

(7) منخفض

(8) نظم الري

(9) رياح الخماسين

(10) الطوب اللبن

(11) ماكينات

(12) ينجو

(13) أدوات





Read again and answer: SB

- ① What did the Ancient Egyptians use to bring water to their crops during droughts?
.....
- ② What did the Ancient Egyptians do to stop the flood damage?
.....
- ③ Describe the weather in Ancient Egypt.
.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert.
كانت مصر القديمة تتمتع بطقس جعل الزراعة ممكنة حتى في الصحراء.
- ✓ The Nile River flooded every year and brought rich soil, but strong floods sometimes damaged farms.
كان نهر النيل يفيض كل عام ويجلب التربة الخصبة، لكن الفيضانات القوية كانت أحيانًا تُلحق تلفًا بالمزارع.
- ✓ To stop floods, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control water.
لإيقاف الفيضانات، بنى المصريون القديما القنوات والأحواض للتحكم في المياه.
- ✓ Droughts happened when there was not enough rain, and the land became dry.
تحدث حالات الجفاف عندما لا يكون هناك أمطار كافية، وتصبح الأرض جافة.
- ✓ To solve the problem of drought, the Ancient Egyptians used irrigation systems to bring water to fields.
لحل مشكلة الجفاف، استخدم المصريون القديما نظم الري لجلب المياه إلى الحقول.
- ✓ Sandstorms, called Khamasin, brought strong, hot winds with sand.
كانت العواصف الرملية، التي تُعرف بالخماسين، تجلب رياحًا قوية وحارة محملة بالرمال.
- ✓ It was hard to see and breathe, so people stayed inside.
كان من الصعب الرؤية والتنفس، لذلك كان الناس يبقون في الداخل.
- ✓ They built their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves.
بنوا منازلهم بالطوب اللبن السميك لحماية أنفسهم.
- ✓ The Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they were smart.
لم يكن لدى المصريين القديما آلات حديثة، لكنهم كانوا أذكىاء.
- ✓ They worked hard, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.
عملوا بجد، واستخدموا أدوات بسيطة، وحماوا أنفسهم من الحرارة والرمال والفيضانات.



Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Rich (brick – soil – machine – storm) helps crops grow.
- ② They used simple (canals – crops – tools – rain) to build their houses.
- ③ We need enough (storm – machine – rain – bricks) to grow plants.
- ④ Droughts made the Nile's water (soil – low – high – spread). SB
- ⑤ Mud (crops – canals – bricks – tables) are used to build homes in Ancient Egypt.
- ⑥ He is very clever. He uses (smart – thick – dry – terrible) ways to solve his problems.

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions or events in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال أو الأحداث التي انتهت في الماضي.

e.g. In Ancient Egypt, the Nile River **flooded** every year.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. - They **went** to the cinema.

- I **rode** a horse last weekend.

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها
:(ed)

e.g. rain - **rained**

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف
:(d) لها

e.g. use → **used**

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن،
يُحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied):

e.g. study → **studied**

الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد المنتهية بـ
(a, e, i, o, u) بعده حرف ساكن، يضاف
لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

e.g. stop → **stopped**

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

أفعال تتغير في زمن الماضي البسيط (تُحفظ) مثل:

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	find يجد	found	make يصنع	made
has/ have يمتلك	had	am/ is يكون (للمفرد)	was	are يكون (للمجمع)	were

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) المصدر في الماضي البسيط

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians **didn't have** modern tools to help them.

e.g. They **didn't go to** the cinema.



Got it:

I **didn't** (**did**) my homework yesterday.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**do**) لأن بعد (**didn't**) يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question:

A: **Did** + subject + (inf.) المصدر في الماضي البسيط?

Answer:

B: **Yes,** subject **did.**

B: **No,** subject **didn't.**

e.g. A: **Did** Dalia **find** her book?

B: **Yes,** she **did.** B: **No,** she **didn't.**

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word did subject (inf.) ...? الفعل في المصدر

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. A: What **did** the Ancient Egyptians **do** when the river flooded?B: They **built** canals and basins to control the water.e.g. A: Who **did** they **play** with?B: They **played** with their friends.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

في الماضي **in the past** - منذ **ago** - الماضي **last** - أمس **yesterday**

Got it:

Where (**do**) they go last week?● (**last week**) في نهاية السؤال تدل على زمن الماضي. بالتالي يجب استخدام (**did**) عند تكوين السؤال. **Checkpoint** 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Eslam (**goes** - **went** - **go** - **going**) to the cinema three days ago.
- 2 My family (**have** - **has** - **having** - **had**) a picnic in the park last Sunday.
- 3 My team didn't (**win** - **wins** - **won** - **winning**) the game last week.
- 4 Did Ola (**goes** - **go** - **went** - **going**) to the store yesterday?
- 5 When (**did** - **does** - **is** - **do**) your dad come home last night?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Mom (**bakes**) a delicious cake for her birthday a week ago.
- 2 My brother (**not**) have his breakfast yesterday.
- 3 Dad didn't (**slept**) well.
- 4 (**Do**) you wake up early yesterday?
- 5 Where (**do**) you live in 1990?

فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط Verb "to be" in the past simple

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / He / She / It + **was** ...e.g. I **was** sad at the party.You / We / They + **were** ...e.g. We **were** excited at the zoo.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I / He / She / It + **wasn't** ...e.g. Ramy **wasn't** fine last week.You / We / They + **weren't** ...e.g. They **weren't** at school yesterday.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Was + (I / he / she / it) ... ?e.g. A: **Was** it a dog?B: **Yes**, it **was**.

OR

B: **No**, it **wasn't**.**Were** + (we / you / they) ... ?e.g. A: **Were** there sandstorms in the past?B: **Yes**, there **were**.

OR

B: **No**, there **weren't**.

Got it:

I (not be) lazy at school last year.

● بسبب وجود (last year)، فإن تصريف الفعل (be) فى الماضى مع الفاعل (I) يكون (wasn't).

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① I (is – am – was – were) happy to see my friend yesterday.
- ② Nawal (is – does – was – were) the tallest student in her class last year.
- ③ The players (am – is – does – were) tired after playing all day.
- ④ The students (aren't – don't – weren't – wasn't) ready for the test last week.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① Yesterday, I (be) at home all day.
- ② (Be) Huda sad yesterday?
- ③ (Be) they happy with their presents?
- ④ Where (do you) go yesterday?

Quick Practice on the Past Simple Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Eman (visit) her grandparents last weekend.
- 2 They (play) football in the park yesterday.
- 3 She (doesn't) eat breakfast this morning.
- 4 Osama (not was) at school yesterday.
- 5 The crops (aren't) ready in time last night.
- 6 I didn't (found) my keys yesterday.
- 7 (Do) you go to the museum last week?
- 8 (Did) it hot last night?
- 9 (Is) the children happy with the last trip?
- 10 Did he (brought) his books two days ago?
- 11 Where (does) she spend her last vacation?
- 12 When did Amira (visited) her uncle?
- 13 Where (do) you go last week?
- 14 Why didn't you (went) to school yesterday? 
- 15 Why (did) she sad last night?

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 yesterday – We – the Pyramids – visited – in Giza.
.....
- 2 bought – dictionary – from the bookstore – I – a new.
.....
- 3 did – arrive – you – Why – home – late?
.....
- 4 Egyptians – build – canals – the – Ancient – Did?
.....
- 5 called – My – friend – me – yesterday – help – to. 



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The floods brought water and to the land. **SB**
 a) sand b) rich soil c) rocks d) heat
- 2 We use water from the Nile River for
 a) farming b) eating c) throwing d) cutting
- 3 The protected the Ancient Egyptians from sandstorms. **SB**
 a) mud bricks b) wood c) pyramids d) metal
- 4 The land near the Nile had many to grow food.
 a) fields b) floods c) bricks d) Khamasin
- 5 They tried to their homes from the sand.
 a) grow b) survive c) build d) protect
- 6 The Ancient Egyptians used systems to bring water to fields.
 a) irrigation b) sand c) strange d) rain

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fields – floods – canals – smart

In Ancient Egypt, the Nile River helped people grow food. Every year, there were (1) that brought water and rich soil. But sometimes, the water was too much. The Egyptians used (2) ways to control the water. They built (3) to carry water to the fields.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 didn't – The Ancient – machines – modern – have – Egyptians.

2 ways – They – smart – survive – found – to.

3 When – school – finish – did – you?

4 be – People – to – inside – safe – stayed. **Super Question ?**

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She (plays) the piano yesterday.
- 2 Ehab (watch) a movie last night.
- 3 The Nile River (flood) every year in Ancient Egypt.
- 4 The Egyptians (use) simple tools in the past.
- 5 They didn't (built) canals in modern times.
- 6 Reda (didn't) excited two days ago.
- 7 (Does) Soha live near the river last year?
- 8 (Did) they happy when they went to the mall?
- 9 (Do) they feel tired after all that work yesterday?
- 10 What did the Ancient Egyptians (does) when the river flooded?
- 11 Salma got her coffee and (goes) with her friend.
- 12 Why (did) the land dry in Ancient Egypt?
- 13 I (am) so excited when I came back from my trip!
- 14 A: (Did) she at school last night? B: No, she wasn't.
- 15 A: (Did) they worried about the last exam? B: Yes, they were.

Super
Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Why do you like egyptian food

.....

- 2 people want to stay safe

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

"The weather in Ancient Egypt"

soil – rain – hot winds



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3



Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

pond	بركة / مستنقع	flies	ذباب	safely	بأمان
leap	يقفز	well	بئر	stuck (adj.)	محشور

Extra vocabulary

frog	ضفدع	village	قرية	edge	حافة
weather	الطقس	extremely	جداً / للغاية	enough (adj.)	كافي
grass	عشب	deep (adj.)	عميق	hole	حفرة
wing	جناح	movement	تحرك / حركة	danger	خطر

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	كان يا ما كان	get worried	يقلق	any longer	بعد الآن
look like	يبدو مثل ...	for a moment	للحظة	what if	ماذا لو
at the bottom	في القاع	be able to	قادر على	get out	يخرج
search for	يبحث عن	dug in	محفور في	protected from	محمى من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
rest	rested	dry	dried
decide	decided	leap	leaped
agree	agreed	search	searched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch	caught	become	became
swim	swam	leave	left

Definitions

pond	an area of water, usually smaller than a lake هي مساحة من الماء، عادة ما تكون أصغر من البحيرة
well	a deep hole dug in the ground to find water هي حفرة عميقة يتم حفرها في الأرض للعثور على الماء
flies	small insects with two thin, small wings هي حشرات صغيرة لها جناحان صغيران ورقيقان
leap	to jump high and far in one big movement أن تقفز عاليًا وبعيدًا في حركة واحدة كبيرة
safely	protected from danger محمى من الخطر

The moral of the story

Share a time when you thought carefully before making a decision.

استغرق وقتًا تفكر فيه جيدًا قبل اتخاذ القرار.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ In a small village, there were two frogs who were best friends and lived in a pond.
في قرية صغيرة، كان هناك ضفدعان صديقان حميمان يعيشان في بركة.
- ✓ They loved their home and had fun catching flies and swimming.
كانا يستمتعان ببركتهماء، ويستمتعان بصيد الذباب والسباحة.
- ✓ The weather became extremely hot, and the pond started to dry up.
أصبح الجو حارًا جدًا، وبدأت البركة تجف.
- ✓ They leaped through fields and grass, looking for another pond.
قفزوا بين الحقول والعشب، باحثين عن بركة أخرى.
- ✓ After a long time, they saw a deep well.
بعد وقت طويل، رأيا بئرًا عميقة.
- ✓ One frog thought it was a great place, with cool, deep water.
اعتقد أحد الضفادع أنه مكان رائع، بمياه باردة وعميقة.
- ✓ The other worried about getting stuck if the well dried up.
أما الآخر، فكان قلقًا من أن يعلق في البئر إذا جف.
- ✓ They kept leaping and searching for a safe home.
ظلّا يقفزان ويبحثان عن موطن آمن.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

How do changes in weather affect our daily lives?

The beginning

Once upon a time, in a small and quiet **village**⁽¹⁾, there were two frogs who were best friends. They lived together in a small **pond**⁽²⁾ near the **edge**⁽³⁾ of the village. The pond was their home, and they loved it very much. Every day, they had fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water, and **resting**⁽⁴⁾ under the warm sun.



- | | |
|-----|---------------|
| (1) | قرية |
| (2) | بركة / مستنقع |
| (3) | حافة |
| (4) | يستريح |

✓ **Checkpoint** The two frogs lived in a small (sea – pond – lake – river).

The middle

One summer, the **weather**⁽⁵⁾ became extremely hot. The sun was strong, and the pond started to **dry up**⁽⁶⁾. The frogs **got worried**⁽⁷⁾. They knew they couldn't stay in the pond **any longer**⁽⁸⁾ because there wasn't enough water for them. They decided to leave the pond and **look for**⁽⁹⁾ a new home where they could live **safely**⁽¹⁰⁾. The two frogs **leaped**⁽¹¹⁾ through **fields**⁽¹²⁾ and grass, looking for another pond. After a long time, they saw a deep **well**⁽¹³⁾. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live! The water is cool, and it's very **deep**⁽¹⁴⁾. We can swim here all day. The other frog thought for a moment and said, "The water is nice now, but what if it dries up one day? If that happens, we will **get stuck**⁽¹⁵⁾ at the bottom of the well, and we won't be able to get out."

- | | |
|------|--------------|
| (5) | الطقس |
| (6) | يجف |
| (7) | يقلق |
| (8) | بعد الآن |
| (9) | يبحث عن |
| (10) | بأمان |
| (11) | قفز |
| (12) | حقول |
| (13) | بئر |
| (14) | عميق |
| (15) | ينحشر / يعلق |

✓ **Checkpoint** There wasn't enough (milk – juice – food – water) for the frogs.

The end

The first frog thought about what his friend said, then **agreed**⁽¹⁶⁾. They decided not to live in the well. Instead, they kept leaping and **searching for**⁽¹⁷⁾ a safe home.

- | | |
|------|---------|
| (16) | اتفق |
| (17) | يبحث عن |

✓ **Checkpoint** The two frogs kept leaping and searching for a (big – small – safe – high) home.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

A **vowel digraph** is when two vowels appear together and make just one sound.

ثنائي الحروف المتحركة هو عندما يظهر حرفان متحركان معًا ويشكلان صوتًا واحدًا فقط.

(ea)

The 'ea' makes a long 'e' sound.

/i:/

leap

يقفز

read

يقرأ

feet

أقدام

hear

يسمع

eat

يأكل

green

أخضر

peas

بازلاء

stream

نهر صغير

meet

يقابل

weak

ضعيف

week

أسبوع

/ʌ/

(oo)

The 'oo' makes a short 'u' sound.

لاحظ أن (oo) يمكن أن تعطينا أصوات مختلفة مثل الصوت /ʊ/ في بعض الكلمات.

flood

فيضان

book

كتاب

foot

قدم

/oʊ/

(oa)

The 'oa' makes a long 'o' sound.

boat

قارب

goat

عنزة

road

طريق

✓ **Checkpoint** Fill in the blanks:

SB

meet – boat – weak – floods

- 1 The (1) sailed across the lake.
- 2 It's nice to (2) my teacher at break.
- 3 The (3) made the plants (4)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A is an area of water, usually smaller than a lake.
a) sea b) river c) pond d) stream
- 2 The children crossed the road
a) safely b) hungrily c) warmly d) nicely
- 3 Birds sometimes catch in the air.
a) balloons b) flies c) fish d) planes
- 4 I like warm and sunny
a) rains b) clouds c) skies d) weather
- 5 The dolphin out of the water and then splashed down.
a) protected b) agreed c) leaped d) rested
- 6 are small insects with two thin, small wings.
a) Feet b) Flies c) Flags d) Fries
- 7 The old man told a story. It taught us a lot.
a) lazy b) weak c) strong d) wise
- 8 They dug a deep for the local people to drink from.
a) bottle b) sea c) well d) water
- 9 Plants without water.
a) dry up b) search for c) dug in d) get out
- 10 To "....." is to jump high and far in one big movement.
a) catch b) fly c) leap d) stay

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **SB**

deep – safe – home – school

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in their pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new (1) After a long time, they saw a (2) well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live in! But the other frog thought it wasn't (3) So, they searched for a better home.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Once upon a time, two frogs lived in a small pond near a quiet village. They were best friends and loved catching flies, swimming, and resting under the sun. One summer, the weather became hot, and the pond started to dry up. The frogs decided to leave and find a new home. They found a deep well, and one frog wanted to live there. But the other said it might dry up too. They both agreed and kept leaping through fields and grass, searching for a safe place to live.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They found a deep
 a) pond b) cage c) cave d) well
- 2 The two frogs loved catching
 a) fish b) flies c) friends d) frogs

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the two frogs live?

- 4 Why did they decide to find a new home?

- 5 What did the two frogs agree on?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 flies – fun – Every day, – catching – had – they.

- 2 under – sun – warm – rested – They – the.

- 3 decided – safe – to – find – They – home – a.

- 4 summer, – hot – One – extremely – became – the weather. Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 what if it dries up one day

- 2 we can swim here all day



Lessons 4 and 5

Once Upon My Imagination

ذات مرة في مخيلتي



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

imagination	مخيلة / تخیلات	cozy (adj.)	مريح	fluffy (adj.)	منفوش / رقيق
whisper	همسة	flip	ينقلب	clap	يصفق
kindness	العطف / الطيبة	fiction	خيال	plot	حبكة القصة

Extra vocabulary

sunshine	شعاع الشمس	cloud	سحابة	gentle (adj.)	لطيف / رقيق
dear	عزيزي / عزيزي	magically	بطريقة سحرية	bright (adj.)	لامع / ساطع
sides	جوانب	joy	مرح / سعادة	problems	مشاكل

Expressions and Phrases

get sunshine	يحصل على شعاع الشمس	upside down	رأساً على عقب / مقلوب
turn right side up	اقلب / لف الجهة الصحيحة لأعلى	turn over	ينقلب
one by one	واحدًا تلو الآخر	a little bit of	القليل من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
float	floated	fix	fixed
whisper	whispered	flip	flipped
clap	clapped	solve	solved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
begin	began	shine	shone

Definition

fiction

a fiction story is a made-up story that is created from the imagination, not based on real things that happened

القصة الخيالية هي قصة مبنية على الخيال، وليست مبنية على أحداث حقيقية حدثت.

Lily's flowers get sunshine! زهور لي لي تحصل على أشعة الشمس!



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Once upon a time, in a **cozy**⁽¹⁾ little house, lived a girl named Lily. One sunny morning, Lily looked out her window and saw something strange. Big, **fluffy**⁽²⁾ clouds were **floating upside down**⁽³⁾! "Oh no!" she cried. "How will my flowers **get sunshine**⁽⁴⁾ if the clouds are upside down?" Lily thought hard. She remembered her grandma saying that sometimes, a gentle **whisper**⁽⁵⁾ could fix things. So, Lily opened her window and whispered, "Please, dear clouds, turn right side up!" Slowly and **magically**⁽⁶⁾, the clouds began to **flip**⁽⁷⁾. One by one, they **turned over**⁽⁸⁾, showing their bright, sunny **sides**⁽⁹⁾. Lily **clapped**⁽¹⁰⁾ her hands with **joy**⁽¹¹⁾. The sun shone brightly, and the flowers smiled. Lily knew that even big **problems**⁽¹²⁾ could be solved with a little bit of **kindness**⁽¹³⁾ and a gentle whisper.

- | | |
|------|---------------------|
| (1) | مريح |
| (2) | منفوش / رقيق |
| (3) | يطفو رأساً على عقب |
| (4) | يحصل على شعاع الشمس |
| (5) | همسة |
| (6) | بطريقة سحرية |
| (7) | ينقلب |
| (8) | انقلبت |
| (9) | جوانب |
| (10) | صفقت |
| (11) | مرح / سعادة |
| (12) | مشاكل |
| (13) | العطف / الطيبة |



Checkpoint

How could big problems be solved?

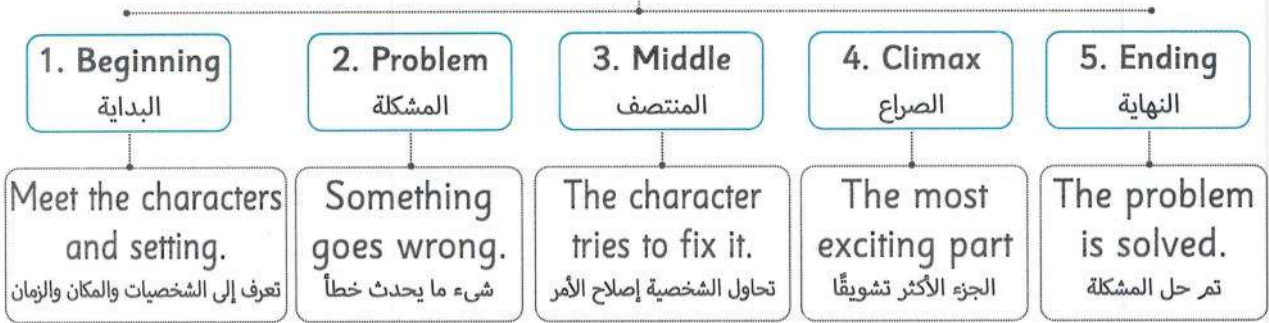


The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Lily lived in a cozy house. عاشت لي لي في منزل دافئ.
- ✓ One sunny morning, she saw strange, upside-down clouds. في صباح مشمس، رأت غيومًا غريبة مقلوبة.
- ✓ Lily cried because her flowers wouldn't get sunshine. بكت لي لي لأن أزهارها لم تحظ بأشعة الشمس.
- ✓ She remembered her grandma had said a gentle whisper could fix things. تذكرت أن جدتها قالت إن همسة رقيقة تُصلح الأمور.
- ✓ Lily opened her window and whispered to the clouds. فتحت لي لي نافذتها وهمست للسحب.
- ✓ Slowly and magically, the clouds began to flip. ببطء وسحر، بدأت السحب تنقلب.
- ✓ The sun shone brightly, and the flowers smiled. أشرقت الشمس ساطعة، وابتسمت الزهور.

Plot حبكة الرواية



Title: Lily's flowers get sunshine!

Beginning: (Introducing Lily and the setting).

Once upon a time, in a cozy little house, lived a girl named Lily.

Problem: (Describe the problem or challenge).

"How will my flowers get sunshine if the clouds are upside down?"

Middle: (Write what Lily tried to do).

Lily opened her window and whispered, "Please, dear clouds, turn right side up!"

Climax: (Make up something exciting!) What happened?

Slowly and magically, the clouds began to flip.

Ending: (What did Lily learn in the end?)

Problems could be solved with kindness and a gentle whisper.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The cat slept in a bed for a long time.
a) tiring b) boring c) cozy d) bad
- 2 We quietly because we didn't want to wake mom up.
a) whispered b) shouted c) flipped d) fixed
- 3 I love my teddy bear.
a) enough b) deep c) strange d) fluffy
- 4 can be solved with help.
a) Clouds b) Problems c) Plants d) Sides
- 5 The students thanked their teacher for her
a) plot b) imagination
c) kindness d) fiction
- 6 You can the page to read more.
a) flip b) imagine c) fix d) leap
- 7 Let's for the winners!
a) get b) float c) turn d) clap
- 8 A/An story is a made-up story created from the imagination.
a) fiction b) action
c) real d) non-fiction

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **SB**

sunshine – cozy – fluffy – whispers

Once upon a time, in a (1) little house, lived a girl named Lily. One sunny morning, Lily looked out her window and saw something strange. Big, (2) clouds were floating upside down! "Oh no!" she cried. "How will my flowers get (3) if the clouds are upside down?"

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Once upon a time, in a cozy house, lived a girl named Lily. One sunny morning, she saw something odd. Big, fluffy clouds floated upside down! She cried because her flowers wouldn't get sunshine. Lily remembered that her grandma had said a gentle whisper could fix things. Lily opened her window and whispered to the clouds. Slowly, magically, clouds began to flip. They turned over, showing bright, sunny sides. Lily clapped with joy. The sun shone brightly. Lily knew big problems could be solved with kindness and a gentle whisper.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Big, fluffy clouds upside down!
a) solved b) smiled c) clapped d) floated
- 2 The underlined word "odd" means
a) cozy b) kind c) strange d) hard

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Lily live?
- 4 Why did Lily cry?
- 5 What did Lily do to fix the problem?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 clouds – floating – Big, – were – upside down – fluffy.
.....
- 2 joy – with – her – clapped – Lily – hands.
.....
- 3 could – whisper – things – a gentle – Sometimes, – fix.
.....
- 4 flowers – sunshine – How – get – my – will?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 lily opened her window and whispered
- 2 the clouds began to flip

6 Write a fiction story of about (30-40) words:

Title:

Beginning:

Problem:

Middle:

Climax:

Ending:



Unit 3

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	lightning	برق
drought	جفاف	temperature	درجة الحرارة
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	crops	محاصيل
wildfire	حرائق الغابات	damaged	تالف / متضرر
flood	فيضان	dust	تراب
heat wave	موجة حارة	news	أخبار
weather	طقس	stuck	عالق

Lesson (2)

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	canals	قنوات مائية
enough rain	أمطار كافية	irrigation systems	نظم الري
rich soil	تربة خصبة / غنية	possible (adj.)	ممكن / مستطاع
mud bricks	الطوب اللبن	fields	حقول
basins	أحواض	Khamasin	رياح الخماسين
machines	ماكينات	problems	مشاكل
farming	الزراعة	tools	أدوات

Lesson (3)

pond	بركة / مستنقع	frog	ضفدع
leap	يقفز	weather	الطقس
flies	ذباب	grass	عشب
well	بئر	wing	جناح
safely	آمن	edge	حافة
stuck	محشور	hole	حفرة
danger	خطر	village	قرية

Lessons (4 and 5)

imagination	مخيلة / تخيلات	cozy (adj.)	مريح
whisper	همسة	flip	ينقلب
kindness	العطف / الطيبة	fiction	خيال
sunshine	شعاع الشمس	fluffy (adj.)	منفوش / رقيق
gentle (adj.)	لطيف / رقيق	clap	يصفق
magically	بطريقة سحرية	plot	حبكة القصة
joy	مرح / سعادة	problems	مشاكل

Language in Use

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة تنتهي بـ (d, ed, ied)

e.g. Mom **cooked** our lunch yesterday.

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة (تتغير عند استخدامها في الماضي)

e.g. We **had** a car last year.

Negative Form:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g. Ali **didn't go** to the gym yesterday.

e.g. We **didn't meet** last week.

Yes/No question:

Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. A: Did they **play** yesterday?

B: Yes, they **did**. / No, they **didn't**.

Wh-question:

Wh-word + **did** + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. A: What **did** you **study**?

B: We **studied** English.

Keywords: yesterday / last (week, night) / (two days, three weeks) ago / in the past / in (2020, 1995)

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
weather		برق
temperature		تراب
thunderstorm		جفاف
sandstorm		موجة حارة
flood		حرائق الغابات
Lesson 2		
Ancient Egypt		تربة خصبة/غنية
machines		أحواض
canals		الطوب اللبن
irrigation systems		حقول
smart		رياح الخماسين
Lesson 3		
pond		ذباب
leap		بئر
safely		محشور
village		جناح
movement		حفرة
Lessons 4 and 5		
whisper		مخيلة/ تخيلات
kindness		مريح
flip		منفوش/ رقيق
fiction		يصفق
gentle		مرح/ سعادة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....	heard	.....	spread
get	.....	strike	.....
.....	dried	.....	flooded
.....	caught	burn	.....
control	.....	.....	brought

لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about the weather in Ancient Egypt:

- Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible.
- أهمية نهر النيل في الزراعة في مصر القديمة + The Nile River
- تأثير الجفاف على الزراعة + Droughts happened
- كيف تغلب المصريون القدماء على الجفاف + To solve this
- كيف بنى المصريون القدماء منازلهم لتحميهم من العواصف الرملية + They built their homes

"The weather in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible. The Nile flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. Droughts happened when there wasn't enough rain and the crops couldn't grow. To solve this, Ancient Egyptians made irrigation systems that brought water to the fields. They built their homes with mud bricks to protect themselves from the sandstorms.

How to write a fiction story:

- Write a beginning to introduce characters and setting.
اكتب مقدمة القصة لتقدم الشخصيات والزمن.
- Introduce a problem.
اطرح مشكلة.
- Explain how the characters are trying to fix the problem.
اشرح كيف تحاول الشخصيات حل المشكلة.
- Introduce the most exciting part of the story.
اطرح النقطة الأكثر إثارة في القصة.
- Write an ending where the problem is solved.
اكتب النهاية حيث يتم حل المشكلة.

"A fiction story"

Leila discovered an old key buried in her grandmother's garden. Its strange shape made her ask what it was for. That night, she dreamt of a door hidden behind the old tree. In the evening, she dug a hole—and found a small wooden box. Inside, there was a single old photo of a woman who looked just like her, written on it "For Leila, when you're ready."

1 Read, think, and match:

☐ A wildfire	a. children are afraid of the lightning.
☐ In a thunderstorm,	b. is when there's too much water covering dry land.
☐ A sandstorm	c. is a severe wind that carries sand and dust through the air making it hard to breathe.
☐ A flood	d. burns through forests and homes.
☐ In a heat wave,	f. happens when there is no rain for a long time.
☐ A drought	e. the temperature is dangerously high for days.

2 Read and write the correct form of the verb between brackets:

- 1 They (visit) the zoo last weekend.
- 2 I (am) so excited about my trip two days ago.
- 3 (Do) the teacher give us homework last Monday?
- 4 Why didn't you (went) to school yesterday?

3 Rewrite the following sentences in the negative form:

- 1 Malik watched TV early last night.
- 2 She saw a nice animal yesterday.
- 3 They were at the club a week ago.

4 Complete the text using the past tense of the verbs in the box:

go – enjoy – are – *celebrate – is – have

Last November, I had a lot of things to do. On Tuesday, November 2nd, I (1) dinner at Grandpa's house. The food (2) delicious. On Saturday, November 6th, I (3) to a nice *concert. Two days later, I (4) myself at Mariam's party. Yesterday, my family and I (5) my birthday. We (6) so happy.



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The story happened in a small and village.
a) loud b) busy c) quiet d) dark
- 2 There were two frogs who were best
a) cousins b) pets c) brothers d) friends
- 3 Every day, they had fun flies.
a) kicking b) catching c) throwing d) drawing
- 4 The frogs liked swimming in the water.
a) cold b) hot c) cool d) warm



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 A burned many trees in the forest.
a) flood b) drought c) wildfire d) sandstorm
- 2 The rain was heavy, and a covered the streets.
a) sandstorm b) flood c) drought d) wildfire
- 3 There was no rain for a long time. It was a
a) sandstorm b) heat wave c) drought d) flood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

flood – drought – wildfire – thunderstorm

There was no rain for many days. The land was dry. This was a (1)
One day, a big (2) came. There was loud thunder and heavy rain.
The rain did not stop. Water filled the streets. It was a (3) People were
happy for the rain, but the flood made a big mess.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Once upon a time, in a small village, two frogs who were best friends lived in a small pond near the edge of the village. They loved their home and had fun every day. One summer, the weather became extremely hot, and the pond started to dry up. The frogs got worried and decided to leave the pond and look for a new home. They leaped through fields and grass until they saw a deep well. One frog wanted to live there, but the other said that it might dry up too, and they wouldn't be able to get out.

- 3 Where is the pond?
- 4 What did the frogs decide to do when the pond dried up?
- 5 Why did the frogs decide not to live in the well?

Writing

1

- 4

- 4

- 7

- What is the weather like in summer?
- What do people do when it's hot?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The Nile River every year. (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) dried b) froze c) flooded d) rained
- 2 The rich soil helped grow.
- a) farms b) houses c) crops d) fish
- 3 Strong floods sometimes damaged
- a) houses b) farms c) roads d) schools
- 4 Canals and basins helped spread water over the
- a) roads b) rivers c) cities d) fields



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 During a , the weather is very hot.
- a) flood b) heat wave c) thunderstorm d) sandstorm
- 2 The car was covered in dust after the
- a) sandstorm b) flood c) drought d) heat wave
- 3 We watched the lightning in the from the window.
- a) drought b) heat wave c) flood d) thunderstorm

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

wildfire – thunderstorm – heat wave – sandstorm

The weather can be very strong. A (1) makes the air hot and dry. A (2) comes with lightning and heavy rain. Sometimes, too much rain causes a flood. In the desert, a (3) can blow sand everywhere. People stay indoors to keep safe during these kinds of weather.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

SB

7

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and rich soil, helping crops grow. But the weather also brought floods, droughts, and sandstorms. Sandstorms, called Khamsin, brought strong, hot winds with sand. It was hard to see and breathe, so people stayed inside to stay safe. They built homes with thick mud bricks to protect from wind and sand. Ancient Egyptians didn't have modern machines, but they found smart ways to survive. They worked hard, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and floods.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 helped crops grow in Ancient Egypt.
a) Rain b) Mountainsd
c) Rich soil and water from the Nile d) Cold weather
- 2 Sandstorms in Ancient Egypt were called
a) floods b) basins c) Khamsin d) Khamsin

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the Nile River give Egypt?
- 4 What did people do when there is a wind and sand?
- 5 How did Ancient Egyptians protect their homes from wind and sand?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 every – flooded – year – The Nile River.

- 2 sold – My – at the market – mangoes – friend.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She didn't (cleaned) her room yesterday.

- 2 Did Sarah (did) her homework last week?

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 where did you go on monday?

- 2 Nada and ali weren't at the party yesterday

7 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A trip to the moon"

How did you travel? – What did you see?

.....

.....

.....



A. Listening

(الرجاء راجع نص المشقاع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Khamasin brings strong, hot winds with (water – leaves – snow – sand).
- 2 During a sandstorm, it is hard to (walk and run – see and breathe – sleep and eat – hear and speak).
- 3 People stay (inside – outside – outdoor – indoor) to stay safe.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

drought – thunderstorm – Did – flood

Ali : (1)..... you see the rain?

Lena : Yes, it was a big (2).....

Ali : Last week, there was no rain.

Lena : That was a (3).....

Ali : Now there is too much water.

Lena : That is a (4).....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Pyramids are big stone buildings built by the Ancient Egyptians. They were made thousands of years ago as tombs for kings and queens. The most famous Pyramid is the Great Pyramid of Giza. It is very tall and made of huge stone blocks. Many people worked hard to build the Pyramids using simple tools. Today, people from all over the world visit Egypt to see them. The Pyramids are a symbol of Egypt and show how smart and strong the Ancient Egyptians were.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What are the Pyramids made of?
- 2 Why do people visit Egypt today?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 - a) The Pyramids are small houses
 - b) The Pyramids are old stone buildings made by Ancient Egyptians
 - c) The Pyramids are used for growing crops
 - d) The Pyramids are made from sand
- 4 Pyramids were made as tombs for
 - a) teachers
 - b) kings only
 - c) kings and queens
 - d) soldiers
- 5 The Pyramids show how the Ancient Egyptians were.
 - a) rich and lazy
 - b) smart and strong
 - c) slow and quiet
 - d) tall and fast

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The (drought – wildfire – flood – lightning) burned many trees in the forest.
- 2 The (thunderstorm – flood – drought – wildfire) made the plants dry and brown.
- 3 The (flood – wildfire – heat wave – drought) covered the streets with water.
- 4 What (does – do – did – did) she do yesterday?
- 5 Maya didn't (has – have – had – was) a car.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 homework – didn't – her – finish – Maya.
- 2 yesterday – My friend – played – and – I – football.
- 3 after – The children – some – candies – ate – dinner.
- 4 hot – The – extremely – weather – became.
- 5 in – there – past – sandstorms – Were – the?

Unit

4

My Community

مجتمعي



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening

- identify specific places by listening to descriptive passages.
- identify vocabulary related to places in the community.

يحدّد أماكن محددة بالاستماع إلى مقاطع وصفية.
يحدّد المفردات المتعلقة بأماكن في المجتمع.

Speaking

- identify different places in the community.
- ask and answer questions about favorite places.
- identify trigraph sounds in spoken words.

يحدد أماكن مختلفة في المجتمع.
يطرح أسئلة حول الأماكن المفضلة ويجيب عنها.
يحدد أصوات الحروف الثلاثية في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Reading

- demonstrate understanding of texts about village life and new city developments.

يظهر فهمه للنصوص المتعلقة بحياة القرية وتطورات المدن الجديدة.
يظهر فهمه للمسائل الكلامية.

- demonstrate understanding of word problems.

Writing

- write a first-person narrative describing a place or experience using clear structure, personal voice, and descriptive language.
- use prepositions of time in context.

يكتب سردًا بضمير المتكلم يصف مكانًا أو تجربة ما، مستخدمًا بنية واضحة، وأسلوبًا شخصيًا، ولغة وصفية.
يستخدم حروف الجر الزمنية في السياق.



Lesson 1

Places in Our Community

أماكن في مجتمعنا



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	coffee shop	مقهى	bakery	مخبز
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	club	نادى	theme park	حديقة ملاهى

Extra vocabulary

neighborhood	حي سكنى	groceries	بقالة/مشتريات	personally	شخصياً
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	fresh (adj.)	طازج	loaves	أرغفة الخبز

Expressions and Phrases

hang out with	يتسكع / يقضى الوقت مع	pick out	يختار / ينتقى
---------------	-----------------------	----------	---------------

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
try	يجرب	tried		pick out	ينتقى / يختار	picked out	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
hang out	يتسكع	hung out		get	يحصل على	got	
come	يأتى	came		buy	يشترى	bought	

Definitions

theme park	You can go on rides there.	يمكنك أن تركب الألعاب هناك.
supermarket	We go there to buy groceries.	نذهب إلى هناك لشراء البقالة.
club	It is a fun place to play sports.	إنه مكان ممتع لممارسة الرياضة.
restaurant	We go there to eat dinner.	نذهب إلى هناك لتناول العشاء.
bakery	You can buy bread and cakes at it.	يمكنك شراء الخبز والكعك منه.
coffee shop	People relax and drink coffee at it.	يسترخي الناس ويشربون القهوة فيه.

Let's go out!



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Tamer and Adel talk about places in their neighborhood.

يتحدث تامر وعادل عن الأماكن في حيهم السكني.



Tamer

Where do you like to go in your neighborhood?

إلى أين تذهب في حيك؟

I like going to the club to play sports, video games, and hang out with my friends. What about you?

أحب الذهاب إلى النادي للعب الرياضة وألعاب الفيديو وقضاء الوقت مع أصدقائي. ماذا عنك؟



Adel



Tamer

I usually go to the supermarket with my family. We have fun picking out groceries together.

عادةً أذهب إلى السوبر ماركت مع عائلتي. نستمع باختيار البقالة معًا.



Adel

That sounds nice! Where do you go when you're hungry?

يبدو ذلك رائعًا! إلى أين تذهب عندما تكون جائعًا؟



Tamer

We often go to restaurants for dinner. My family likes to try different places every weekend.

غالبًا ما نذهب إلى المطاعم لتناول العشاء. عائلتي تحب تجربة أماكن مختلفة كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.



Adel

That's cool! Personally, I like going to the coffee shop for coffee and cake. It's so relaxing.

هذا رائع! شخصيًا، أحب الذهاب إلى المقهى لتناول القهوة والكيك. إنه مريح جدًا.



Tamer

Listen, I want to get some fresh bread from the bakery near the park. Do you want to come with me?

استمع، أريد أن أشتري بعض الخبز الطازج من المخبز القريب من الحديقة. هل تريد أن تأتي معي؟



Adel

Oh yes! I always buy a few loaves when I'm near there. Their bread is the best.

أوه نعم! أنا دائمًا أشتري بعض الأرغفة عندما أكون قريبًا من هناك. خبزهم هو الأفضل.



Tamer

Let's go this afternoon.

هيا نذهب بعد ظهر اليوم.



Adel

Great idea!

فكرة رائعة!



Read again and answer:

SB

- 1 What does Adel do at the club with his friends?
.....
- 2 Where does Tamer usually go for dinner?
.....
- 3 What does Adel like to have at the coffee shop?
.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Adel likes going to the club to play sports, video games, and be with his friends.
يحب عادل الذهاب إلى النادي لممارسة الرياضة، ولعب ألعاب الفيديو، وقضاء الوقت مع أصدقائه.
- ✓ Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with his family to pick out groceries.
عادةً ما يذهب تامر إلى السوبر ماركت مع عائلته لاختيار البقالة.
- ✓ when Tamer's family is hungry. they go to restaurants for dinner.
عندما تشعر عائلة تامر بالجوع، يذهبون إلى المطاعم لتناول العشاء.
- ✓ Adel enjoys going to the coffee shop for coffee and cake because it's relaxing.
يستمتع عادل بالذهاب إلى المقهى لتناول القهوة والكيك لأنه يشعره بالراحة.
- ✓ Tamer wants to get fresh bread from the bakery near the park.
يريد تامر شراء خبز طازج من المخبز القريب من الحديقة.
- ✓ Adel agrees to go with Tamer because he loves the bread from that bakery.
وافق عادل على الذهاب مع تامر لأنه يحب الخبز من ذلك المخبز.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 The waiter brought us a healthy meal at the (bakery – club – restaurant – supermarket).
- 2 We always play football at the (theme park – club – coffee shop – bakery).
- 3 Adel went on rides at the (theme park – coffee shop – bakery – restaurant).
- 4 People can buy bread at the (theme park – club – coffee shop – bakery).
- 5 My sister goes shopping at the (theme park – coffee shop – supermarket – restaurant).
- 6 A (theme park – coffee shop – club – neighborhood) is a place for having a drink.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Tamer and Adel talk about places they visit in their
 a) country b) school c) neighborhood d) city
- 2 Adel likes going to the
 a) club b) park c) bakery d) library
- 3 Tamer enjoys going to the supermarket with his
 a) brother b) teacher c) friend d) family
- 4 Tamer suggests going to the near the park.
 a) restaurant b) bakery c) club d) bookstore

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I like drinking something at the
 a) bakery b) club c) coffee shop d) hospital
- 2 The theme park is a place for
 a) sleep b) play c) learning d) study
- 3 I can buy a fresh cake at the
 a) restaurant b) library c) club d) bakery
- 4 We sometimes have lunch at the
 a) bakery b) club c) restaurant d) hospital
- 5 This chair is I like it.
 a) dangerous b) happy c) noisy d) relaxing
- 6 He is eating a lot. He's
 a) angry b) hungry c) sad d) nice

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ahmed. I live with my friends in a nice neighborhood. We always hang out after school. We have fun picking out groceries together. We often go to restaurants for dinner. We usually play football at the club. My family likes to try different places every weekend. My father sometimes takes us to the theme park. I like going to the coffee shop for coffee and cake. It's so relaxing. My father always gets some fresh bread from the bakery near my house. Their bread is the best.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The text is about
 a) jobs b) cities c) friends d) places
- 2 I like going to the coffee shop for coffee and
 a) cake b) football c) water d) bread

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do Ahmed and his friends do after school?

.....

- 4 Where does his father take them?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 I – to – the – club – going – like.

.....

- 2 come – you – want – to – with – Do – me?

.....

- 3 together – have – buying – food – We – fun.

.....

- 4 do – you – to – go – Where – like?

.....

- 5 get – to – some – I – bread – want.

.....

5 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

“Places in our community”

restaurant – club – bakery

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 2



القرى المصرية Egyptian villages



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary

village	قرية	fields	حقول	cottage	كوخ
community center	مركز مجتمعي	main square	الساحة الرئيسية	barns	حظائر

Extra vocabulary

quiet (adj.)	هادئ	hills	تلال	friendly (adj.)	ودود
cozy (adj.)	مريح	air	هواء	fresh (adj.)	منعش / طازج
calm (adj.)	هادئ	sheep	خرفان/ غنم	fun	متعة

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملء بـ	the busiest	الأكثر زحمة
---------	--------	-------------	-------------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
live يعيش	lived	shop يتسوق	shopped
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
hear يسمع	heard	feel يشعر	felt
meet يقابل	met	keep يبقى/ يحافظ على	kept

Take care !

كلمة "like" في اللغة الإنجليزية مرنة جدًا ولها استخدامات عديدة:

١. فعل (Verb): "يحب" أو "يستمتع بـ" هذا هو الاستخدام الأكثر شيوعًا ووضوحًا:

e.g. I like reading books.

٢. حرف جر (Preposition): "مثل" أو "شبيه بـ" تُستخدم لإعطاء أمثلة أو للإشارة إلى التشابه:

e.g. Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens.



Read the text:

اقرأ النص:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What do you feel about living in a village?

I live in a small **village**⁽¹⁾ with green **fields**⁽²⁾, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of life. My family and I live in a **cozy cottage**⁽³⁾ near the **community center**⁽⁴⁾. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels calm.

The **main square**⁽⁵⁾ is the busiest place. On Saturdays, people meet there to shop at the market. Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the **barns**⁽⁶⁾. I visit my uncle's barn to help feed the animals. The community center is a fun place. I meet my friends and play games there every Thursday.

At night, the village is quiet. I walk near the fields and look at the stars. I love my village. It is a happy place to live.

- | | |
|-----|-----------------|
| (1) | قرية |
| (2) | حقول |
| (3) | كوخ مريح |
| (4) | مركز مجتمعي |
| (5) | الساحة الرئيسية |
| (6) | حظائر |



Read again and answer:

SB

1 What is the busiest part of the village?

.....

2 What is the village like at night?

.....

3 Name two animals that you can find in village barns.

.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ I live in a small village with green fields. أنا أعيش في قرية صغيرة بها حقول خضراء.
- ✓ My family and I live in a cozy cottage near the community center. أنا وعائلتي نعيش في كوخ مريح بالقرب من المركز المجتمعي.
- ✓ Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. - كل صباح، أسمع الطيور تغرد وأرى المزارعين يعملون في الحقول.
- ✓ The main square is the busiest place. - الساحة الرئيسية هي أكثر الأماكن ازدحامًا.
- ✓ Farmers keep animals in the barns. - يحتفظ المزارعون بالحيوانات في الحظائر.
- ✓ I meet my friends and play games at the community center. - ألتقي بأصدقائي وألعب الألعاب في المركز المجتمعي.
- ✓ At night, the village is quiet. - في الليل، تكون القرية هادئة.
- ✓ I enjoy walking near the fields and looking at the stars. - أستمتع بالمشي قرب الحقول والنظر إلى النجوم.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① My uncle lives in a (cottage – barn – village – city) with tall trees and quiet hills.
- ② Farmers keep their chickens and sheep in the (barn – restaurant – cottage – hospital).
- ③ They are all sleeping, so the place is (noisy – full – quiet – fresh).
- ④ People meet at the (cottage – main square – barn – coffee shop) to shop at the market.
- ⑤ The farmers work in the (air – supermarkets – cottages – fields).
- ⑥ The air is (fresh – polluted – dirty – black) in the village.

Language in Use



Prepositions of Time

We use **on** before:

نستخدم (on) قبل:

days of the week

أيام الأسبوع

e.g. I go swimming **on** Mondays.

أذهب للسباحة أيام الإثنين.

dates

تواريخ

e.g. My birthday is **on** June 1st.

عيد ميلادي في الأول من يونيو.

on the weekend

في نهاية الأسبوع

e.g. We go shopping **on** the weekend.

نذهب للتسوق في نهاية الأسبوع.



Got it:

I have a test (**at**) May 15th.● الإجابة الصحيحة (on) لأنه تاريخ اليوم (15th).We use **at** before:

نستخدم (at) قبل:

clock times

الأوقات

e.g. Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.

تهبط رحلتنا الساعة ٨ مساءً.

mealtimes

أوقات الوجبات

e.g. We play basketball **at** lunchtime.

نلعب كرة السلة في وقت الغداء.

time phrases

عبارات زمنية

e.g. I go to bed **at** night.

أذهب للسرير في الليل.



Got it:

Mona starts work (**in**) 7:30.

● الإجابة الصحيحة (at) لأنها بعدها وقت (ساعة).

We use **in** before:

نستخدم (in) قبل:

months

الشهور

e.g. We visit our cousins **in** June.
نزور أبناء عمى فى شهر يونيو.

seasons

فصول السنة

e.g. We went on vacation **in** the summer.
ذهبنا فى إجازة فى الصيف.

years

السنوات

e.g. I was born **in** 2010.
ولدت عام ٢٠١٠.

parts of the day

أجزاء اليوم

e.g. They arrived **in** the morning.
وصلوا فى الصباح.

**Got it:**

Ali went to school (**at**) the morning.

● الإجابة الصحيحة (in) لأنه جاء بعدها فترة من فترات اليوم.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① The restaurant opened (**of** – **at** – **in** – **on**) 2002.
- ② We play every day (**in** – **on** – **at** – **with**) 7:30.
- ③ I will meet my friend (**on** – **in** – **off** – **at**) lunchtime.
- ④ In England, it often snows (**on** – **in** – **next** – **at**) December.
- ⑤ My father doesn't work (**on** – **in** – **at** – **with**) night.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① The meeting is (**in**) 3 pm.
- ② I usually have coffee (**at**) the morning.
- ③ She was born (**on**) July.
- ④ The party is (**at**) May 15th.
- ⑤ He enjoys playing football (**in**) the weekend.

Quick Practice on Prepositions of Time

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I go to school (on) the morning.
- 2 Sara studies English (on) 7:30.
- 3 Do you sleep (at) the evening?
- 4 Where do you go (on) 7 am?
- 5 Don't call me (in) night.
- 6 My birthday is (at) June 24th.
- 7 I meet my friends (on) lunchtime.
- 8 All mothers are happy (in) Mother's Day.
- 9 We always go to the beach (on) the summer.
- 10 My uncle was born (on) December.
- 11 Your lesson starts (on) 9 am.
- 12 Do you visit your grandpa (at) Mondays?
- 13 Sara comes back from school (at) the afternoon.
- 14 We can drink coffee (in) break.
- 15 We bought this house (on) 2015.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 sleep – night – They – at – can.
.....
- 2 had – birthday – party – She – on – her.
.....
- 3 rains – in – It – winter – usually – the.
.....
- 4 arrives – school – at – bus – 7:30 – The.
.....
- 5 has – dinner – Adel – evening – the – in.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The animals sleep in the every night.
a) office b) barn c) station d) school
- 2 We live in a cozy small near the river.
a) cottage b) club c) park d) square
- 3 At night, the village is very and quiet.
a) crowded b) loud c) busy d) calm
- 4 Farmers work hard every day to grow crops in the
a) forests b) rivers c) fields d) supermarkets
- 5 I opened the window to enjoy the air in the morning.
a) fresh b) hot c) dry d) polluted
- 6 The villagers meet at the to shop at the market.
a) hill b) square c) cottage d) barn

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cottage – calm – noisy – life

My uncle lives in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of (1) My family and I live in a cozy (2) near the community center. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels (3)

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our village is small, with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. It is full of life, and the people are very friendly. Many families live in cozy cottages. Every morning, farmers work in the fields. On Saturdays, people meet at the main square to shop. I meet my friends and play games at the community center every Thursday. Our community center is a fun place. We also visit barns where farmers keep animals like cows. At night, the village feels calm. We love our happy village.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Our village is small, with green
a) barns b) fields c) centers d) squares
- 2 Farmers keep in the barns.
a) shops b) communities c) cottages d) animals

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who works in the fields?
.....
- 4 What do the friends do at the community center?
.....
- 5 How is the village at night?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 at – dinner – have – family – 6:30 – My.
.....
- 2 on – They – Saturdays – zoo – visit – the.
.....
- 3 in – snows – January – often – It.
.....
- 4 don't – We – go to – at – library – lunchtime – the. 

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Ramy's shop finishes work (in) 2:30 pm.
- 2 Tree leaves grow (at) spring.
- 3 He started his job (on) 2020.
- 4 We have a swimming practice (in) Thursdays.
- 5 The public park opens (on) 9 am.
- 6 The school concert is (at) Wednesday.
- 7 The sun rises brightly (at) the morning every day.
- 8 Is Ola's birthday (in) July 4th?
- 9 The movie starts (with) 8:30 pm, so hurry up!
- 10 We have fun (of) winter when there's a lot of snow.
- 11 We celebrate the festival (on) October.
- 12 (At) Saturdays, Ayman goes cycling.
- 13 I usually go to Alexandria (on) summer.
- 14 My dad came home (in) midnight.
- 15 He was born (on) March.



Lesson 3



Math



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A farmer has 4 boxes of apples. If each box has 32 apples, then how many apples does the farmer have in total?

لدى مزارع أربعة صناديق تفاح. إذا كان كل صندوق يحتوي على ٣٢ تفاحة، فكم عدد التفاحات التي يملكها المزارع؟

First, —→ we need to understand the question:

أولاً، علينا أن نفهم السؤال.

- How many apples? - How many boxes?

Then, —→ we put the double-digit on the tops, and the single-digit on the bottom.

ثم نضع الرقم المزدوج في الأعلى، والرقم الفردي في الأسفل.

Finally, —→ we multiply!

وأخيراً، نقوم بعملية الضرب!

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{tens} \quad \text{ones} \\
 \begin{array}{cc}
 3 & 2 \\
 \times & 4 \\
 \hline
 12 & 8
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

Step (1)

Multiply the ones by 4.

So, 2 ones $\times$ 4 ones = 8 ones

Step (2)

Multiply the tens by 4.

So, 3 tens $\times$ 4 ones = 12 tens

Problem: $32 \times 4 = ?$

Solution: = 128

Answer: = 128 apples

It's easy! Now, try. Solve the following math problem. **SB**

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \dots 2 \\
 \times \quad 3 \\
 \hline
 6 \dots
 \end{array}$$

A farmer has 3 baskets. Each basket contains 22 oranges.

How many oranges does the farmer have in total?

Problem: $\dots \times \dots = ?$

Solution: =

Answer: =



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

A **trigraph** is a group of three letters that represents a single sound.

المقطع ثلاثي الحروف هو مجموعة من ثلاثة أحرف تمثل صوتاً واحداً.

* The trigraph 'dge' sounds like 'j'.

/dʒ/

bridge

كوبري

fridge

ثلاجة

* The trigraph 'tch' sounds like 'ch'.

/tʃ/

match

مباراة/ عود كبريت

watch

ساعة يد/ يشاهد

witch

ساحرة

* The trigraph 'igh' sounds like 'i'.

/aɪ/

right

صح/ يمين

flight

رحلة طيران

bright

لامع



Listen and circle the word that has the trigraph you hear:



1 flight – near – witch

.....

2 bright – pure – fridge

.....

3 chair – fair – watch

.....

Practice



Lesson 3

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The goes over the river.
a) watch b) bridge c) lake d) fridge
- 2 She keeps fruit in the
a) flight b) night c) right d) fridge
- 3 She took a to Paris.
a) flight b) flies c) flat d) bridge
- 4 I watched a football yesterday.
a) match b) witch c) flight d) song
- 5 A lives in that old house.
a) watch b) ball c) wing d) witch
- 6 This tells the time.
a) pen b) book c) watch d) toy
- 7 The stars look at night.
a) fight b) bright c) right d) flight
- 8 She gave the answer.
a) on b) down c) up d) right

2 Look and fill in the missing trigraph. SB

igh – dge – tch



bri---



ma---



r---t



fl---t



fri---



wa---

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 and – wide – The – strong – is – bridge.

.....

2 the cake – fridge – in – put – I – the.

.....

3 was – long – The – too – flight.

.....

4 match – five – The – at – o'clock – starts.

.....

5 witch – about – a story – We – a – read.

.....

6 me – gold – Dad – a – watch – gave.

.....

7 sun – bright – very – The – today – is.

.....

8 wall – the – The clock – right – on – is.

.....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 i like to watch the stars

.....

2 don't leave the fridge door open

.....

3 is this the right book

.....

4 that flower is bright and colorful

.....



Lessons 4 & 5



Writing

The New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Main vocabulary

administrative (adj.)	إداري	capital	عاصمة
crowding	ازدحام	smart (adj.)	ذكي / متطور
government (adj.)	حكومي	offices	مكاتب
Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني	steel	صلب / فولاذ

Extra vocabulary

technology	تكنولوجيا	roads	طرق	energy	طاقة
areas	مناطق	buildings	مبانى	airport	مطار
floors	أدوار / طوابق	whole	كل	peaceful (adj.)	هادئ

Expressions and Phrases

east of Cairo	شرق القاهرة	made of	مصنوع من	from the top	من الأعلى
---------------	-------------	---------	----------	--------------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
reduce يقلل	reduced	design يصمم	designed
use يستخدم	used	manage يدير	managed
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
build يبني	built	have يمتلك	had

Egypt's New City مدينة مصرية جديدة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in **the New Administrative Capital**⁽¹⁾, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps **reduce**⁽²⁾ **crowding**⁽³⁾ in Cairo. The city is designed to be very **smart**⁽⁴⁾. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy and almost everything.



The city has green areas everywhere. It has also **government offices**⁽⁵⁾ and important buildings. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the **Iconic Tower**⁽⁶⁾, and a new **airport**⁽⁷⁾! The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high and has 80 floors. It is made of strong glass and **steel**⁽⁸⁾. From the top, I can see the whole city! People here can find great jobs and have a **peaceful**⁽⁹⁾ life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

- | | |
|-----|--------------------------|
| (1) | العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة |
| (2) | يقلل |
| (3) | الازدحام |
| (4) | ذكي / متطور |
| (5) | مكاتب حكومية |
| (6) | البرج الأيقوني |
| (7) | مطار |
| (8) | صلب / فولاذ |
| (9) | هادئ |



Read again and answer:



- 1 Where is the New Administrative Capital located?
- 2 How does it help Egypt?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital. أعيش أنا وعائلي في العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.
- ✓ It is 45 km east of Cairo. تقع على بُعد ٤٥ كيلومترًا شرق القاهرة.
- ✓ This new city helps reduce crowding in Cairo. تساعد هذه المدينة الجديدة على تخفيف الازدحام في القاهرة.
- ✓ It is designed to be very smart. صُممت لتكون مدينة ذكية للغاية.
- ✓ Modern technology manages roads, water, energy and almost everything. تُدير التكنولوجيا الحديثة الطرق والمياه والطاقة وكل شيء تقريبًا.
- ✓ The city has green areas, government offices, and important buildings. تتميز المدينة بمساحات خضراء ومكاتب حكومية ومباني مهمة.
- ✓ The city has Africa's tallest building, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport. تضم المدينة أطول مبنى في إفريقيا، وهو البرج الأيقوني، ومطارًا جديدًا.
- ✓ People find great jobs and have a peaceful life here. يجد الناس هنا وظائف رائعة ويعيشون حياة هادئة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Tokyo is the of Japan.
a) town b) village c) country d) capital
- 2 happens when many people are in one place.
a) Making b) Building c) Crowding d) polluting
- 3 I have a new smartphone. It uses technology.
a) modern b) old c) stupid d) slow
- 4 The bridge is made of
a) steel b) paper c) plastic d) rubber
- 5 He watches YouTube on his TV.
a) comic b) toy c) stupid d) smart
- 6 The is in the New Administrative Capital.
a) Eiffel Tower b) London Tower c) Iconic Tower d) Cairo Tower
- 7 The room is quiet and
a) high b) peaceful c) loud d) noisy
- 8 We arrived at the to take a plane.
a) airport b) hospital c) school d) office

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floors – steel – Tower – wood

The New Administrative Capital has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic (1)..... It is 385 meters high and has 80 (2)..... It is made of strong glass and (3)..... From the top, I can see the whole city! People here can find great jobs and have a peaceful life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding. The city is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy, and almost everything. It has green areas everywhere, government offices, and important buildings. The city has

Africa's tallest building, Iconic Tower, and a new airport. People here find great jobs and have a peaceful life. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The New Administrative Capital is on the of Cairo.
a) north b) east c) west d) south
- 2 The Iconic Tower is the tallest building in
a) Italy b) Asia c) America d) Africa

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why is modern technology used?
- 4 How tall is the Iconic Tower?
- 5 How is life in the New Administrative Capital?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 builds – Egypt – cities – almost – new – everywhere.
.....
- 2 Capital – New – The – crowding – Administrative – reduces.
.....
- 3 used to – roads – technology – Modern – manage – is.
.....
- 4 green – everywhere – has – The – areas – city.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 The iconic tower is 385 meters high.
.....
- 2 i can see the whole city
.....

6 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My city"

Where is it? – Why is it so great? – What is special about it?

.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

restaurant	مطعم	groceries	بقالة / مشتريات
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	fresh	طازج
coffee shop	مقهى	personally	شخصيًا
club	نادي	loaves	أرغفة الخبز
bakery	مخبز	relaxing	مريح
theme park	حديقة ملاهي	pick out	ينتقى/يختار
neighborhood	حي سكني	hang out	يتسكع

Lesson (2)

village	قرية	quiet	هادئ
community center	مركز مجتمعي	cozy	مريح
fields	حقول	calm	هادئ
main square	الساحة الرئيسية	hills	تلل
cottage	كوخ	air	هواء
barns	الحظائر	sheep	غنم / خرفان
friendly (adj.)	ودود	fun	متعة

Lesson (3)

bridge	كوبري	match	مباراة/ عود كبريت
witch	ساحرة	fridge	ثلاجة
watch	ساعة يد	right	صح
flight	رحلة طيران	bright	لامع

Lessons (4 and 5)

administrative	إداري	capital	عاصمة
roads	طرق	crowding	ازدحام
smart	ذكي/ متطور	buildings	مباني
government	حكومي	offices	مكاتب
technology	تكنولوجيا	Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني
steel	صلب / فولاذ	areas	مناطق

Language in Use

Prepositions of Time

at

with times

- at six o'clock
- at 7 am/ pm
- at night/ noon/ midnight
- at lunchtime/ break time

on

with days and dates

- on Monday
- on my birthday
- on April 13th
- on the weekend
- on holidays
- on school days
- on Mother's Day

in

with times of days, months, seasons, and years

- in the morning/ afternoon/ evening
- in May
- in summer
- in 2004

Unit 4

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

restaurant	.....	.....	مخبز
supermarket	.....	.....	حديقة ملاهى
coffee shop	.....	.....	نادى
neighborhood	.....	.....	يتسكع
groceries	.....	.....	ينتقى/ يختار

Lesson 2

village	.....	.....	الساحة الرئيسية
community center	.....	.....	كوخ
fields	.....	.....	حظائر
cozy	.....	.....	تلال
friendly	.....	.....	خرفان/ غنم

Lesson 3

bridge	.....	.....	ساعة يد
match	.....	.....	صح
witch	.....	.....	رحلة طيران
fridge	.....	.....	لامع

Lessons 4 & 5

administrative	.....	.....	عاصمة
crowding	.....	.....	ذكى/ متطور
steel	.....	.....	مكاتب
roads	.....	.....	حكومى
buildings	.....	.....	البرج الأيقونى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

.....	came	.....	built
buy	.....	hang out	.....
.....	designed	.....	felt
.....	reduced	shop	.....
try	.....	.....	met



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about life in your village.

- I live in a small village with green fields.
- It has + الأماكن الموجودة داخل القرية.
- The people there are + وصف الناس في القرية.
- They + ما يفعله الناس في القرية.
- Every morning + ما تفعله كل صباح.
- I love my village. It is a happy place to live in.

"Life in my village"

I live in a small village with green fields. It has tall trees and green hills. The people there are kind and friendly. They keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the barns. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. I love my village. It is a happy place to live in.

How to write a narrative text about your city:

- Use first person pronouns, like "I, my".
- Define the setting of your story.
- Write what you want to do.
- Use adjectives for description.
- Write an ending to the story.

استخدم ضمائر المتكلم مثل «أنا، لي»

حدد مكان وزمان قصتك

اكتب ما تريد فعله

استخدم الصفات للوصف

اكتب نهاية للقصة

"A narrative text about my city"

My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital. It's a new city that helps reduce crowding in Cairo. The city has green areas everywhere. The city where I live has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower. I want the whole world to know how beautiful my city is. It is my favorite city in Egypt.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Read and complete the sentences using the words in the box:

bakery – restaurant – club – coffee shop – theme park – supermarket

- 1 At the, you can go on rides.
- 2 If you want to buy groceries, go to the
- 3 The is a fun place to play sports.
- 4 I go to the to eat dinner.
- 5 You can buy bread and cakes at the
- 6 People relax and drink coffee at the

2 Complete the text using the words in the box:

square – meeting – animals – cottages

Life in a village is peaceful and simple. People live in cozy (1) surrounded by green fields and fresh air. There is a market in the main (2) where people buy and sell fresh fruit and vegetables. Farmers keep their (3) in barns. Children have fun at the community center.

3 Write the correct preposition of time:

- 1 I was born March.
- 2 Let's meet 3 pm.
- 3 The party is Friday.
- 4 I like to relax the evening.

4 Read and correct the prepositions of time:

- 1 I travel to Aswan on February. (.....)
- 2 My dad watches TV on night. (.....)
- 3 We go to the club in Fridays. (.....)
- 4 Salma was born at 2012. (.....)
- 5 My sister's birthday is in May 17th. (.....)
- 6 The restaurant closes on 10 pm. (.....)

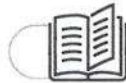


Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I visit my to help feed the animals. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
 a) uncle's farm b) uncle's barn c) aunt's barn d) cousin's farm
- 2 The community center is a place.
 a) scary b) boring c) quiet d) fun
- 3 I meet my friends and play games there every
 a) Thursday b) Sunday c) Monday d) Tuesday
- 4 I walk near the fields and look at the
 a) cars b) stars c) trees d) houses



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We ate lunch at a nice near the park.
 a) supermarket b) restaurant c) library d) bank
- 2 They sell tea and cake at the
 a) fire station b) school c) coffee shop d) theme park
- 3 I usually drink some tea with my friends at the
 a) school b) coffee shop c) supermarket d) zoo

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

coffee shop – theme park – school – supermarket

On Saturday, I had a wonderful day. My parents took me to a (1), and we went on many fun rides. After that, we went to the (2) to buy groceries. We sat at a (3) to rest and have a drink. On the way home, we stopped at the bakery to buy some cake.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of life. My family and I live in a cozy cottage near the community center. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The main square is the busiest place, especially on Saturdays when people shop at the market. Farmers keep cows, sheep, and chickens in the

barns. I love my village because it is a happy place to live in. I play games with my friends at the community center every Thursday. I love my quiet, happy village.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The writer lives in a ".....".
a) city b) village c) barn d) forest
- 2 The writer plays games at the
a) cottage b) market c) community center d) barn

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What animals do farmers keep in the barns?
.....
- 4 What happens in the main square on Saturdays?
.....
- 5 Why does the writer love the village?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 a healthy – waiter – The – meal – brought.
.....
- 2 friends – cottage – live – My – a cozy – in.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The coffee shop is very busy (in) lunchtime.
- 2 We go swimming (on) the summer.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how does it help egypt?
- 2 We have holidays in july

8 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Egypt's new city"

reduce crowding – smart

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I live in a small with green fields.
a) city b) country c) village d) park
- 2 The people in the village are
a) noisy b) friendly c) tired d) busy
- 3 The village is full of
a) houses b) shops c) animals d) life
- 4 My family and I live in a cozy
a) cottage b) apartment c) palace d) tent



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 The farmer keeps cows and chickens in the big red
a) community center b) barn
c) club d) bakery
- 2 We went to a last weekend and rode the roller coasters.
a) theme park b) field c) supermarket d) cottage
- 3 The served delicious pasta and fresh juice.
a) barn b) theme park c) coffee shop d) restaurant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

barn – supermarket – field – community center

During the weekend, I visited my cousin's cottage in the village. Behind the house, there was a wide (1) full of flowers. We walked to the (2) to see the horses and goats. Later, we went to the (3) where children were painting and playing games. It was a fun and peaceful day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt builds new cities almost everywhere. My family and I live in the New Administrative Capital, 45 km east of Cairo. It helps reduce crowding in Cairo and is designed to be very smart. Modern technology is used to manage roads, water, energy, and almost everything. The city has green areas, government offices, and important buildings. It also has the tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport. The Iconic Tower is 385 meters high, has 80 floors, and is made of strong glass and steel. People here can find great jobs and have a peaceful life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Egypt builds new cities almost
a) every day b) everywhere c) every week d) everyone
- 2 The Iconic Tower has 80
a) offices b) jobs c) roads d) floors

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was the New Administrative Capital built?
.....
- 4 What is the tallest building in Africa?
.....
- 5 What is the Iconic Tower made of?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 in – see – I – working – farmers – fields – the.

2 square – The – busiest – main – the – place – is.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 My birthday is (at) June 25th.

2 School starts (in) 8 o'clock.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 the festival is in december.

2 They arrived on monday morning

8 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A day at the theme park"

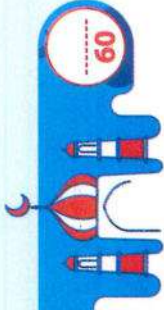
What did you do? – What food or snacks did you eat there?

.....

.....

.....

.....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 My family and I live in a cozy (tent – cottage – palace).
- 2 The cottage is near the (learning – sports – community) center.
- 3 Everything feels (cool – calm – clean) in the village.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

coffee shop – at – bakery – club

Omar : Where are you going?

Laila : I'm going to the (1) to buy some bread.

Omar : Nice! I just came from the (2) I had a hot chocolate.

Laila : That sounds yummy! Are you going to the (3) later?

Omar : Yes, I'm playing football there (4) 5 o'clock.

Laila : Great! See you there!

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, my friends and I went to the theme park. We saw many fun rides and games. First, we went on the Ferris wheel and saw the whole park from the top. Then, we played games and won a big teddy bear. After that, we had pizza and juice at the coffee shop inside the park. In the evening, we watched a parade with music and lights.

It was an amazing day full of fun and laughter. I hope we go again soon!

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where did they eat pizza and juice?
- 2 What prize did they win while playing games?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The general idea of the text is about (a visit to a zoo – a day at the theme park – a picnic in the forest).
- 4 They saw the whole park from the top of the (roller coaster – slide – Ferris wheel).
- 5 In the evening, they watched a (football match – movie – parade).

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The football (club – supermarket – barn) meets every Saturday for practice.
- 2 I helped my dad carry the groceries from the (village – field – supermarket) to the car.
- 3 The (field – bakery – museum) sells delicious bread and cookies.
- 4 Adel was born (in – on – at) 2003.
- 5 Nadia decided to climb the hill (in – on – at) Tuesday.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 bread – bakery – The – offers – special.
.....
- 2 decorate – We – lights – the – with – cottage.
.....
- 3 at – We – o'clock – eat – six – dinner.
.....
- 4 in – flowers – spring – bloom – The.
.....
- 5 to – I – the – going – coffee shop – like.
.....

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The news reported about going outside in extreme heat tomorrow.
a) wonders b) warnings c) makings d) playing
- 2 The too much rain caused
a) drought b) dryness c) floods d) storms
- 3 Sandy couldn't sleep from the The lightning scared her.
a) thunderstorm b) sandstorm c) rain d) wildfire
- 4 Many trees got burned down because of the
a) rain b) flood c) wind d) wildfire
- 5 The made it hard form Reem to see and breathe.
a) sandstorm b) thunderstorm c) flies d) heat
- 6 The Ancient Egyptians built to protect themselves from the floods.
a) houses b) boats c) canals d) roads
- 7 The weather is really hot. There is a wave coming next week.
a) cold b) cool c) dry d) heat
- 8 Farmers are using systems to water the soil when there is drought.
a) irrigation b) migration c) drying d) cooling
- 9 The frog high from one pond to another.
a) leaped b) ran c) played d) cried
- 10 We need soil to grow crops.
a) poor b) wide c) rich d) small

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A heat – cold – wildfires – burned

The weather this summer has been extremely hot. There was a (1) wave last week. There were also (2) in some forests. Many trees were (3) down. We should stay inside and be safe.

B canals – irrigation – mud – rain

The Ancient Egyptians were very smart. In the extreme weather conditions, they built their houses from (1) bricks to protect themselves from the heat. They made (2) systems to water the plants. They also built (3) to save the lands from drought. They used the rich soils to plant crops.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The Ancient Egyptians (use) mud bricks to build their houses.
- 2 Eman (not went) to school last week.
- 3 There (was) wildfires last summer.
- 4 It (not raining) last winter.
- 5 Amira (enjoy) traveling to Dubai 2 years ago.
- 6 (Where) you absent last week?
- 7 Where (you went) last Thursday?
- 8 Hana (spend) the weekend at home because of the sandstorm.
- 9 Omar (win) the tennis tournament last year.
- 10 Marwa (bakes) a delicious cake for her mom's birthday last month.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Manar wanted some fresh bread, so she bought some from the
a) bakery b) coffee shop c) club d) park
- 2 I went to the to buy groceries.
a) restaurant b) hospital c) theme park d) supermarket
- 3 I visited my grandfather's where he keeps chickens and cows.
a) barn b) country c) house d) center
- 4 The people in our community decided to stop using their cars to
crowding.
a) introduce b) produce c) reduce d) increase
- 5 We wanted to try Chinese food, so we went to a new
a) shop b) restaurant c) barn d) village
- 6 Yosra always picks her coffee from the before going to
work.
a) community b) club c) coffee shop d) supermarket
- 7 My little sister went to the barn to with the animals there.
a) feed b) play c) drink d) enjoy
- 8 This car is really strong. It is made of
a) wood b) steel c) carton d) paper

- 9 The new has many rides that we wanted to try.
 a) supermarket b) coffee shop c) restaurant d) theme park
- 10 The poster looks good. The design is really
 a) bad b) smart c) weak d) busy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A groceries – restaurant – bakery – rides

We have so many places to go to in our community. We can buy our (1) from the supermarket. My dad likes buying fresh bread from the (2) every morning. I spend time with my friends at the club where we can play together. A new theme park will open next month where we can go on (3) there.

B hills – cottage – feed – play

Last weekend, I visited my grandparents. They live in a (1) in a small village. I went to the barn to (2) the animals. Then, we went to the main square where it is the busiest. The village has many (3)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I wake up every day (on) 6:30.
- 2 Reem always comes home (on) the evening.
- 3 We prefer to travel (at) the weekends.
- 4 My family eats their lunch (on) the afternoon.
- 5 I go to the club (in) Fridays.
- 6 I like spending time (on) my grandfather's village.
- 7 (on) August, the weather is hot.
- 8 Her birthday is (in) June, 14th.
- 9 Hanaa moved to Hurghada (at) 2002.
- 10 Amir likes to watch TV (in) night.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 It hasn't rained in many years which caused a
a) wildfire b) thunderstorm c) drought d) flood
- 2 When Khamasin hit, Amir couldn't see or
a) breathe b) eat c) drink d) play
- 3 The teacher gave Amr a because he was late to class.
a) wonder b) warning c) gift d) book
- 4 Soha visited her uncle in the where he lives in a cottage.
a) community b) village c) roof d) hill
- 5 A new opened, so I went to try their coffee.
a) supermarket b) bakery c) club d) coffee shop

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 wildfire – burned down – The – trees.
.....
- 2 made – their houses – mud bricks – The Ancient Egyptians – from.
.....
- 3 The car – damaged – was – in the – flood.
.....
- 4 Hesham – animals – feeds – in – the barn.
.....
- 5 groceries – from – We – buy – the supermarket.
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 (Does) they travel last summer?
- 2 She (not ate) lunch yesterday.
- 3 I like shopping (on) the afternoon.
- 4 Abdelrahman will come to Egypt (at) February.
- 5 Heba (meeting) her friends last weekend.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The heavy rain caused that covered the streets.
a) drought b) floods c) heatwave d) damage
- 2 The farmers planted their crops in soil that helped them grow strong.
a) rich b) poor c) weak d) easy
- 3 The city built to carry water to the farms.
a) soils b) systems c) canals d) houses
- 4 The children played together every evening in their friendly
a) center b) community c) shop d) bakery
- 5 To crowding, the school added more classrooms.
a) reduce b) increase c) add d) use

2 Read and complete the text using the words in the box:

heat – cool – sand – sandstorm – see

Last summer, there were extreme weather conditions. There was a (1) wave and the weather was so hot and dry. Then, there was a (2) called Khamasin. It is a strong, hot wind with (3) People couldn't (4) or breathe.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1 We didn't (saw) our cousins last week.
- 2 Amira (moves) to a new school last year.
- 3 We like to go to the club (on) the evening.
- 4 (Were) Sarah at the training yesterday?
- 5 Mona likes reading books (on) the morning.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

wildfire – heat – awful – burned

Mariam : Did you hear about the wave?

Sahar : Yes, I heard it caused a lot of fires.

Mariam : There was a in one of the forests in the U.S.A.

Sahar : That's

Mariam : Many trees were down.

Sahar : We should be more careful during those extreme weather conditions.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 She (**visits** – **visiting** – **visited**) the museum yesterday.

2 (**Where** – **When** – **Why**) did she go last summer?

3 Maya didn't (**eat** – **ate** – **eating**) any fried food.

4 The class starts (**in** – **at** – **on**) 9 o'clock.

5 We went to the beach (**on** – **at** – **in**) Saturday.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 fresh – We – buy – from – bread – the bakery.

.....

2 People – see or breathe – couldn't – during – the sandstorm.

.....

3 Did – visit – the village – you?

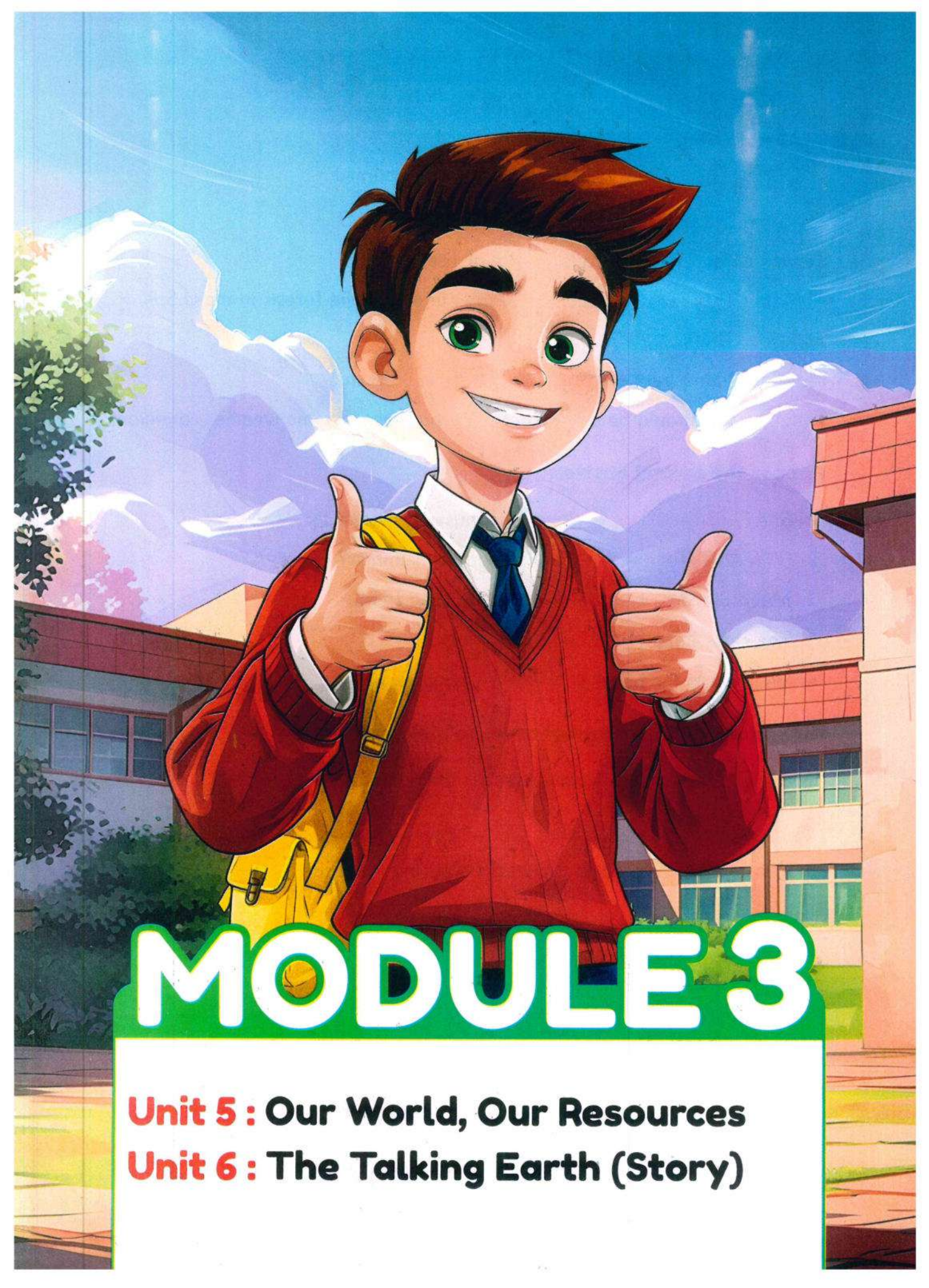
.....

4 Mona – feeding – likes – the animals.

.....

5 damage – caused – The flood – a lot of.

.....



MODULE 3

Unit 5 : Our World, Our Resources

Unit 6 : The Talking Earth (Story)



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- ask and answer questions about Egypt's natural resources.
- discuss the importance of natural resources.
- identify stressed syllables in prefixed words.

يطرح الأسئلة ويجيب عنها حول الموارد الطبيعية في مصر.
يناقش أهمية الموارد الطبيعية.
يحدد المقاطع المشددة في الكلمات المزودة ببادئات.

Listening

- listen to dialogs and answer comprehension questions.
- identify natural resources-related vocabulary.

يسمع إلى حوارات ويجيب على أسئلة الفهم.
يتعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالموارد الطبيعية.

Reading

- answer comprehension questions about natural resources texts.
- recognize and understand natural resources vocabulary.

يجيب على أسئلة الفهم للنصوص حول الموارد الطبيعية.
يتعرف على مفردات الموارد الطبيعية ويفهمها.

Writing

- complete sentences using comparative adjectives.
- write a descriptive paragraph about conserving natural resources.

يكمل الجمل باستخدام صفات المقارنة.
يكتب فقرة وصفية عن طرق الحفاظ على الموارد الطبيعية.



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	water	ماء
soil	تربة	minerals	معادن	fossil fuel	وقود أحفوري
wind	رياح	fertile (adj)	خصبة	electricity	كهرباء

Extra vocabulary

nature	طبيعة	daily (adj)	يومي	The Nile River	نهر النيل
farming	زراعة	treasures	كنوز	oil	نפט
natural gas	غاز طبيعي	company	شركة	wheat	قمح
Delta region	منطقة الدلتا	gold	ذهب	iron	حديد

Expressions and Phrases

Excellent!	ممتاز!	is/are used to + inf.	يُستخدم لـ
That's right	هذا صحيح	Well done!	أحسن!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
talk يتحدث	talked	name يسمي	named
provide يوفر	provided	contain يحتوى	contained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
find يجد	found	grow ينمو	grew

Definitions

natural resources الموارد الطبيعية	things from nature that help us live أشياء من الطبيعة تساعدنا في العيش
fertile خصبة	land with rich soil to grow food أرض ذات تربة غنية لزراعة الغذاء
minerals المعادن	crystals and metals, like gold and copper بلورات وفلزات مثل الذهب والنحاس
electricity الكهرباء	the energy used to power homes and machines الطاقة المستخدمة لأمداد المنازل والآلات بالطاقة
cotton القطن	a soft, white plant that is used to make fabric نبات أبيض ناعم يستخدم لصنع الأقمشة

Treasures of Egypt كنوز مصر



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Mr. Hani and his students are discussing natural resources.

السيد هانى وطلابه يناقشون الموارد الطبيعية.



Good morning, class! Today, we will talk about natural resources. Do you know what natural resources are?

صباح الخير، أيها الفصل! اليوم سنتحدث عن الموارد الطبيعية. هل تعرفون ما هي الموارد الطبيعية؟

Yes! They are things we find in nature, like water and trees.

نعم! إنها أشياء نجدها في الطبيعة، مثل الماء والأشجار.



Ali



Very good! Natural resources help us in our daily lives. Can you name a natural resource we can find in Egypt?

جيد جداً! الموارد الطبيعية تساعدنا في حياتنا اليومية. هل يمكنكم ذكر مورد طبيعي موجود في مصر؟

The Nile River! It provides water for drinking and farming.

نهر النيل! إنه يوفر الماء للشرب والزراعة.



Mona



Excellent! The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt. What other treasures does Egypt have?

ممتاز! النيل هو أهم مورد مائي في مصر. ما هي الكنوز الأخرى التي تمتلكها مصر؟

We have oil and natural gas. My uncle works for an oil company.

لدينا النفط والغاز الطبيعي. عمى يعمل في شركة نفط.



Ali



That's right! Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and electricity. What about farming?

صحيح! يُستخدم النفط والغاز الطبيعي في صنع الوقود والكهرباء. ماذا عن الزراعة؟

We grow cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit.

نزرع القمح والقطن والعديد من أنواع الفاكهة.



Mona



Mr. Hani

Well done! The fertile land along the Nile and in the Delta region helps us grow food.

أحسنتم! الأراضي الخصبة حول النيل وفي منطقة الدلتا تساعدنا في زراعة الغذاء.



Ali

I read that Egypt has minerals, too, like gold!

قرأت أن مصر لديها معادن أيضاً، مثل الذهب.



Mr. Hani

That's right! Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals, as well.

صحيح! تحتوي صحارى مصر على الذهب والحديد ومعادن أخرى أيضاً.



Mona

They're used to make jewelry, make buildings, and help our country grow.

تُستخدم لصنع المجوهرات والمباني وتساعد في نمو بلدنا.



Mr. Hani

Well done, class.

أحسنتم، أيها الطلاب.



Read again and answer: **SB**

- 1 What are natural resources?
- 2 Where can we find gold in Egypt?
- 3 What do we grow in Egypt?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Natural resources are things we find in nature, like water and trees.
 الموارد الطبيعية هي أشياء نجدها في الطبيعة مثل الماء والأشجار.
- ✓ The Nile River provides water for drinking and farming.
 نهر النيل يوفر الماء للشرب والزراعة.
- ✓ Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and electricity.
 يُستخدم النفط والغاز الطبيعي في صنع الوقود والكهرباء.
- ✓ Egypt grows cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit.
 تزرع مصر القمح والقطن والعديد من أنواع الفاكهة.
- ✓ Fertile land along the Nile helps grow food.
 الأراضي الخصبة على امتداد النيل تساعد في زراعة الغذاء.
- ✓ Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals.
 تحتوي صحارى مصر على الذهب والحديد ومعادن أخرى.
- ✓ Minerals are used to make jewelry and buildings.
 تُستخدم المعادن في صنع المجوهرات والمباني.
- ✓ Natural resources help our country grow.
 تساعد الموارد الطبيعية في نمو بلدنا.

Take care !

- للتحديث عن المواد التي تصنع منها الأشياء نستخدم:

Subject (الفاعل) + **is / are + used to + inf.** الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Oil and natural gas **are used to make** fuel.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Things we find in (**class** – home – nature – **parks**) are natural resources.
- 2 Water and (**pencils** – trees – cars – **bricks**) are natural resources.
- 3 The Nile River provides water for drinking and (**exercising** – **weaving** – **teaching** – farming).
- 4 My uncle works in an oil (**farm** – **machine** – **company** – **class**).
- 5 Oil and (**wood** – **water** – **trees** – **natural gas**) are used to make fuel.
- 6 Gold and iron are (**minerals** – fruit – trees – **buildings**).



Read the text again. Who said these sentences? **SB**

Mr. Hani - Ali - Mona

- 1 Minerals are used to make jewelry and make new buildings
- 2 The Nile is the most important water resource in Egypt
- 3 Natural resources are things found in nature

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 There are types of natural resources.
a) one b) two c) three d) four
- 2 Sunlight,, and wind are renewable resources.
a) oil b) natural gas c) minerals d) water
- 3 Minerals, oil, and natural gas are resources.
a) renewable b) non-renewable c) man-made d) jewelry
- 4 We can find all natural resources in
a) shops b) books c) rivers d) nature

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt. SB
a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
- 2 is a soft white plant that is used to make fabric.
a) Resources b) Minerals c) Rivers d) Cotton
- 3 A fertile land has a rich to grow food.
a) soil b) water c) cotton d) electricity
- 4 Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron. SB
a) companies b) crops c) minerals d) secrets
- 5 Gold is used for making
a) jewelry b) minerals c) wind d) fuel
- 6 makes cars, ships, and airplanes move. Super Question ?
a) Fossil fuel b) Soil c) Water d) Sunlight

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

iron – machine – farming – cotton

Egypt is rich in natural resources. The Nile River gives us water for (1)..... drinking, and daily life. Egypt also has oil and natural gas, used to produce energy. Farmers grow crops like (2)....., wheat, and fruits in the Nile Delta. In the deserts, Egypt has gold, (3)....., and other minerals. These resources support the economy and help people in their jobs and daily needs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello! My name is Emad. Social studies is my favorite subject. Mr. Hani is our teacher and he teaches us about Egypt's natural resources. Natural resources are things we find in nature, like water and trees. We have oil and natural gas. They are used to make fuel and electricity. Farmers use the Nile's water to grow cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit. Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals, as well. They're used to make jewelry, make buildings, and help our country grow.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) Natural resources b) Social studies
 c) Mr. Hani d) Emad
- 2 is Emad's favorite subject.
 a) Math b) Social studies
 c) English d) Science

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are natural resources?

- 4 What are oil and natural gas used for?

- 5 What do farmers grow?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 natural – Today, – talk – about – we'll – resources.

- 2 in nature – We – find – natural – resources.

- 3 use – We – natural – gas – to make – can – electricity.

- 4 contain – Egypt's – deserts – and – iron – gold. 

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 natural resources help our country grow

- 2 why is the Nile important?



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

metal	معدن	mineral resources	موارد معدنية	diamond	ألماس
copper	نحاس	coins	عملات معدنية	jewelry	مجوهرات
rare (adj.)	نادر	valuable (adj.)	قيم	strong (adj.)	قوى
electrical (adj.)	كهربائي	wires	أسلاك	pipes	أنابيب
tools	أدوات	airplanes	طائرات	bridges	كبارى
miners	عمال المناجم	non-renewable (adj.)	غير متجدد		

Extra vocabulary

precious (adj.)	ثمين	soft (adj.)	لين	shiny (adj.)	لامع
rings	خواتم	cheaper (adj.)	أرخص	Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية

Expressions and Phrases

under the earth	تحت الأرض	easy to shape	سهل التشكيل
use (something) for	يستخدم شيئاً ما لـ	deep into the ground	عميقاً في الأرض
millions of years to form	ملايين السنين لتشكل	use (something) wisely	يستخدم شيئاً ما بحكمة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
use	used	shape	shaped
form	formed	waste	wasted

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
get	got	dig	dug



Read and notice: أقرأ ولاحظ:

Gold

ذهب

rings	خواتم
coins	عملات معدنية
jewelry	مجوهرات

Copper

نحاس

electrical wires	أسلاك كهربائية
pipes	أنابيب
tools	أدوات

Iron

حديد

cars	سيارات
ships	سفن
airplanes	طائرات
bridges	كبارى

Hidden Treasures

كنوز خفية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

Have you seen a real crystal or mineral?

Under the earth, we find **precious⁽¹⁾** mineral resources like gold, **diamond⁽²⁾**, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things.

Gold is soft, **shiny⁽³⁾**, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and **jewelry⁽⁴⁾**. I love gold rings! Diamond is a rare mineral even more valuable than gold!

Copper⁽⁵⁾ is a strong metal which we use **electrical wires⁽⁶⁾**, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert.

Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, **airplanes⁽⁷⁾**, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt. To get minerals, miners **dig⁽⁸⁾** deep into the ground. But minerals are **non-renewable⁽⁹⁾** they take millions of years to form! So we must use them wisely and never waste them.



(1)	ثمين
(2)	ألماس
(3)	لامع
(4)	مجوهرات
(5)	النحاس
(6)	أسلاك كهربائية
(7)	طائرات
(8)	يحفر
(9)	غير متجددة



Read again and answer: SB

- 1 Why does real jewelry cost so much money?
- 2 What do we use to make electrical wires?
- 3 How do we get mineral resources?



Read and write T (True) or F (False):



- 1 We find metals and minerals underground. ()
- 2 Iron is weak and breaks easily. ()
- 3 Jewelry is made of gold. ()
- 4 Minerals take a few months to develop. ()



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Precious mineral resources are found under the earth. توجد موارد معدنية ثمينة تحت الأرض.
- ✓ Gold is soft, shiny and used for jewelry. الذهب لين ولامع ويستخدم في المجوهرات.
- ✓ Diamond is a rare mineral that is more valuable than gold. الألماس معدن نادر و قيمته أكبر من الذهب.
- ✓ Copper is used for electrical wires and pipes. يُستخدم النحاس في الأسلاك الكهربائية والأنابيب.
- ✓ Egypt gets copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. تحصل مصر على النحاس والذهب من الصحراء الشرقية.
- ✓ Iron is used to make cars, ships, and airplanes. يُستخدم الحديد في صناعة السيارات والسفن والطائرات.
- ✓ Miners dig deep into the ground to get minerals. يحفر عمال المناجم عميقاً في الأرض لاستخراج المعادن.
- ✓ Minerals are non-renewable resources that take millions of years to form. المعادن موارد غير متجددة تستغرق ملايين السنين لتتشكل.



Note

- للتحدث عن استخدامات الأشياء نستخدم:

Subject + الفاعل + use + object + المفعول + for + noun or v + ing.

e.g. - People use gold for coins.

- We use gold for making rings.



Language in Use

Comparative Adjectives

صفات المقارنة

Comparative Adjectives are used to compare two people, things, animals, or things.
تُستخدم الصفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين أو شيئين مختلفين.

A) Short adjectives:

الصفات القصيرة

- عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)، نضع "er + than" بعد الصفة
- لاحظ الصفات الآتية عند إضافة الـ "er".

short adjective + er + than صفة قصيرة + er + than

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than):

old → older
small → smaller

e.g. Gold is cheaper than diamond.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (r) فقط وبعدها (than):

large → larger
nice → nicer

e.g. Cats are nicer than dogs.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (ier) وبعدها (than):

happy → happier
heavy → heavier

e.g. Amira is happier than Mohamed.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن ويضاف (er):

big → bigger
thin → thinner

e.g. Elephants are bigger than lions.



Got it:

Plam trees are (tall) than orange trees.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (taller) لوجود كلمة (than) ولأننا نقارن بين شيئين.

✓ Checkpoint Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Habiba is (young) than Ola.
- 2 The bags are (heavy) than the books.
- 3 Airplanes are (fast) than cars.

B) Long adjectives:

الصفات الطويلة

- عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات الطويلة (ذات مقطعين أو أكثر)، نضع (أقل **less** / أكثر **more**) قبل الصفة ويضاف بعدها "than".

e.g. dangerous / colorful / beautiful / delicious ...

than + الصفة الطويلة + long adjective + أقل **less** / أكثر **more**

e.g. Diamond is **more** precious **than** copper.



Note

يوجد بعض الصفات الغير منتظمة ويتغير شكلها عند استخدامها كصفة مقارنة.

good → better than

e.g. Fruits are **better than** burgers.

bad → worse than

e.g. His grades are **worse than** my grades.

little → less than

e.g. I have **less** money **than** my brother.

many / much → more than

e.g. January has **more** days **than** February.



Got it:

Iron is (**valuable**) than copper.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**more valuable**) لوجود كلمة (**than**) ولأننا نقارن بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات الطويلة.

Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

1 Iron is (**more durable** – durable – the durable – be durable) than gold.

2 Caves are (**big** – bigger – a big – the big) than holes.

3 English is (**more** – much – many – that) difficult than math.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Drinking water is (**good**) than drinking soda.

2 Omar is (**healthy**) than Essam.

3 Birds are more intelligent (**that**) insects.

Quick Practice on Comparative adjectives

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 This book is (interesting) than the one we read last week.
- 2 A car is (fast) than a bicycle.
- 3 His behavior was (bad) than yesterday.
- 4 The Nile is (long) than most rivers.
- 5 Today is hotter (that) yesterday.
- 6 My homework was (difficult) than my brother's.
- 7 Mona's drawing is (good) than yours.
- 8 My grandpa is (old) than my dad.
- 9 This math problem is (confusing) than the last one.
- 10 Dad's room is (big) than ours.
- 11 This street is (narrow) than that one.
- 12 The new movie is (exciting) than the old one.
- 13 She is kinder (they) her sister.
- 14 Apples are (many) delicious than mangoes.
- 15 Her dress is (expensive) than mine.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 summer – is – The winter – than – cooler – the.
.....
- 2 The – than – taller – tree – is – house – the.
.....
- 3 class – louder – than – is – Our – yours.
.....
- 4 are – dangerous – Tigers – than – giraffes – more.
.....
- 5 sunflowers – Roses – more – colorful – are – than.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to
a) break b) make c) shape d) eat
- 2 People use gold to make coins and
a) wires b) jewelry c) food d) chairs
- 3 Diamond is a rare
a) plant b) liquid c) animal d) mineral
- 4 Copper is used to make pipes, tools, and electrical
a) clothes b) wood c) wires d) beds
- 5 Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern
a) River b) Lake c) Desert d) Tower
- 6 Iron is very strong and helps build
a) fruit b) paper c) bridges d) songs
- 7 Iron is used in cars, airplanes, and
a) bags b) ships c) shoes d) books
- 8 To get minerals, miners dig into the
a) ocean b) sky c) ground d) river
- 9 Minerals are non resources.
a) soft b) living c) renewable d) clean
- 10 Minerals take millions of years to
a) clean b) grow c) form d) waste

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

Copper – mineral resources – non-renewable

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all (1) Each one is special. Gold is soft and shiny, perfect for jewelry. (2) is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are (3) , so we must use them wisely.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. Copper is a strong metal which we use to make electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt. To get minerals, miners dig deep into the ground. But minerals are non-renewable, they take millions of years to form! So, we must use them wisely and never waste them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "precious" means
a) cheap b) old c) expensive d) ancient
- 2 Egypt gets most of its copper from the
a) Nile Delta b) Western Desert c) Sinai Region d) Eastern Desert

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we find mineral resources?
.....

- 4 Why must we use minerals wisely?
.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The green tree is (tall) than the bush.
- 2 A cat is (small) than a dog.
- 3 The city library is (old) than our school.
- 4 This rock is (hard) than the sponge.
- 5 The ice cream is (cold) than the milk.
- 6 The new tool is more useful (then) the broken one.
- 7 The flower is (beautiful) than the weed.
- 8 The final test is (important) than the quiz.
- 9 The vanilla cake is (delicious) than the bread.
- 10 The smart student is (careful) than the lazy one.

5 Write a paragraph about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Minerals in our world"

under the earth – important things – use it for





Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

digger	حفار	load	يشحن / يحمل	cargo	بضائع
thick (adj.)	سميك	give up	يستسلم	path	طريق

Extra vocabulary

proud (adj.)	فخور	shore	ساحل	popular (adj.)	مشهور
mud	طين	machines	آلات	clear (adj.)	واضح
size	حجم	strength	قوة	others	آخرون

Expressions and Phrases

across the ocean	عبر المحيط	ready to help	مستعد للمساعدة
come close to	يقترّب من	something goes wrong	يحدث خطأ ما
got stuck	يعلق	right away	على الفور
take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	what matter	ما يهم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
admire يُعجب بـ	admired	sail يبحر	sailed
watch يشاهد	watched	rush يسرع	rushed
pull out يسحب	pulled out	bother يضايق	bothered
stare يحدق	stared	laugh يضحك	laughed
clear يزيل	cleared	float يطفو	floated
repair يُصلح	repaired	smile يتسم	smiled

Definitions

cargo	بضائع	goods which are carried by a large ship	السلع التي تنقلها السفن الكبيرة
digger	حفارة	a machine or tool used for digging	آلة أو أداة تستخدم للحفر
give up	يستسلم	to stop trying	أن يتوقف عن المحاولة
path	طريق/ممر	a route or way for traveling	مسار أو طريقة للسفر
thick	سميك	something that is not thin	شيء غير رقيق
load	يحمل / يشحن	to put things onto ships	وضع الأشياء على السفن

«فقط شاهد!» قصة بقلم الحفار الصغير "Just Watch!" a story by Little Digger

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Beginning: Meet the people/ Know the place.

Everyone admired the big ship. It was huge, and proud as it sailed across the ocean. I was just a little digger ⁽¹⁾ on the shore—not big, not popular—but always ready to help. One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load ⁽²⁾ some cargo ⁽³⁾. But then, something went wrong. It got too close and got stuck in the thick ⁽⁴⁾, heavy mud.



- | | |
|-----|-------|
| (1) | حفار |
| (2) | يحمل |
| (3) | بضائع |
| (4) | سميك |

✓ **Checkpoint** The story takes place on a (roof – garden – shore – boat).

Problem: Something goes wrong.

The ship tried and tried to move, but it couldn't. Other big machines ⁽⁵⁾ rushed ⁽⁶⁾ to help, but none of them could pull it out. Then I saw everyone starting to give up. "I can help!" I said.

- | | |
|-----|--------|
| (5) | آلات |
| (6) | أسرعوا |

✓ **Checkpoint** The little digger wanted to (give up – help – go away – sleep).

Middle: The character tries to fix it.

The big machines stared ⁽⁷⁾ at me and laughed. "You? You're so small!" But I didn't let that bother me. I smiled and said, "Just watch!" I got to work right away, digging ⁽⁸⁾ carefully around the ship and clearing the mud. It took a long time, but I didn't stop. Finally, the path was clear, and the big ship floated free!

- | | |
|-----|--------|
| (7) | حدّقوا |
| (8) | حفر |

✓ **Checkpoint** The little digger started clearing the (sand – dust – water – mud).

Ending: The problem is solved.

The ship looked at me, amazed. "Thank you, little digger! I didn't think someone so small could help me." I smiled again and said, "Size doesn't matter. What matters is using your strength ⁽⁹⁾ to help others."

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| (9) | قوة |
|-----|-----|

✓ **Checkpoint** Size (will – does – is – doesn't) matter.

The moral of the story

Size doesn't matter. What matters is using your strength to help others.

الحجم لا يهم. ما يهم حقًا هو أن تستخدم قوتك لمساعدة الآخرين.



Tip!

The story elements are:

عناصر القصة هي:

Characters:

The people and animals in a story

الشخصيات: هي الناس أو الحيوانات في القصة

Setting:

The time and place of a story

إطار الزمان والمكان

Plot

الحبكة

The little digger

The big ship

Time
One morning

Place
on the shore

Beginning / Problem /
Middle / Climax/ Ending



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The big ship got stuck in thick mud near the shore.

علقت السفينة الكبيرة في الوحل الكثيف بالقرب من الشاطئ.

- ✓ The little digger offered to help when others gave up.

عرض الحفار الصغير المساعدة عندما استسلم الآخرون.

- ✓ Big machines laughed at the small digger's offer.

سخرت الآلات الكبيرة من عرض الحفار الصغير.

- ✓ The digger worked hard to clear a path in the mud.

عمل الحفار بجد لفتح طريق في الوحل.

- ✓ The digger is small, but he is ready to help.

الحفار صغير، لكنه مستعد للمساعدة.

- ✓ The ship was amazed by the little digger's success.

اندهشت السفينة من نجاح الحفار الصغير.

- ✓ It's not about size. It's about helping others with your strength.

الأمر لا يتعلق بالحجم. إن الأمر يتعلق بمساعدة الآخرين بقوتك.



Read again and answer:



- 1 Why did the big ship get stuck?

.....

- 2 Who tried to help the big ship but failed?

.....

- 3 What do we learn from the story?

.....



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Prefix: البادئة

A **prefix** is a group of letters that is added before a word to change its meaning.

البادئة الكلمة هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف في بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

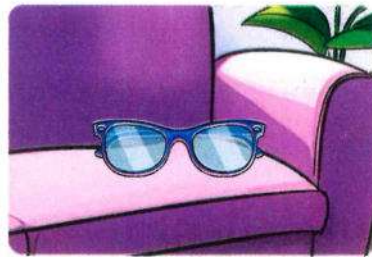
The prefix "**mis-**" means "**wrongly**". البادئة تعني بطريقة خاطئة.

e.g.

necessary

misspell

يخطئ هجاء



misplace

يضع في غير مكانه

I always **misspell** the word «necessary».

I often **misplace** my glasses.

The prefix "**bi-**" means "**two**".

البادئة تعني «اثنين».

e.g.



bicycle

دراجة (بعجلتين)

I rode my **bicycle** to the park yesterday.

The prefix "**dis-**" means "**not**".

البادئة تعني «لا».



dislike

لا يحب

He **dislikes** playing football.



Notes

If the base word has one syllable, **the stress** is on the base word.

- إذا كانت الكلمة الأصلية تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد، فإن التوكيد (الشدة) يكون على الكلمة الأصلية.

e.g. **misspell**, **dislike**.

If the base word has two syllables, **the stress** is often on the prefix.

- إذا كانت الكلمة الأصلية تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين، فغالبًا ما يكون التوكيد (الشدة) على البادئة.

e.g. **bicycle**

Practice



Lesson 3

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The little digger lived on the
a) south b) house c) building d) shore
- 2 It was not big or popular, but it was always
a) useless b) sad c) helpful d) bored
- 3 The big got stuck in the thick mud.
a) ship b) machine c) digger d) boat
- 4 The little digger worked hard and cleared the for the ship.
a) shore b) beach c) sea d) path

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The ship sailed across the
a) ocean b) road c) sand d) sky
- 2 The big ship got stuck in thick, heavy
a) snow b) water c) mud d) grass
- 3 You wrote the word wrongly. You it.
a) misplaced b) disliked c) spelled d) misspelled
- 4 Ali ice cream. He never eats it.
a) misplaces b) misspells c) dislikes d) admires
- 5 "The little digger" story teaches us that doesn't matter. Super Question ?
a) color b) size c) time d) name

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floated – machines – load – laughed

The proud big ship got stuck in thick mud near the shore. Big (1) failed to save it. A small digger offered help, but machines (2) at it because it was tiny. Still, it didn't give up. It worked hard, digging and clearing mud around the ship. After a long time, the path was clear and the ship (3) free. Amazed, the ship thanked the digger, learning that size doesn't matter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sami's favorite story is "The Little Digger". It's about a big famous ship that sailed in the sea, but got stuck in heavy mud near the shore. Huge machines tried to help, but they couldn't. The brave little digger, who wasn't so popular, offered to help. Nobody believed it could help because it was so tiny. It worked hard and carefully, and after a while, the ship was free! The ship was amazed and thanked the digger. The digger replied, "Size doesn't matter. What matters is using your strength to help others."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sami's favorite is "The Little Digger".
a) subject b) magazine c) story d) show
- 2 The underlined word "popular" means
a) famous b) small c) tiny d) unknown

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the story about?

.....

- 4 Why did nobody believe the little digger can help?

.....

- 5 What does the story teach us?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 hadeer misplaced her glasses

.....

- 2 size doesn t matter.

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

The story of "The Little Digger"

Who are the characters? / What is the setting? / What's the moral of the story?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

tear	دمعة	bathe	يستحم
destroy	يدمر	sweat	عرق

Extra vocabulary

cloud	سحابة	quiet (adj.)	هادئ	wild (adj.)	جامح / مضطرب
thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	dirty (adj.)	قذر	hurt (adj.)	متألم
greater (adj.)	أعظم	oceans	المحيطات	shape	شكل

Expressions and Phrases

without me	بدونى	fall too hard	يسقط بقوة كبيرة
------------	-------	---------------	-----------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
dance يرقص	danced	bathe يستحم	bathed
cry يبكي	cried	need يحتاج	needed
search يبحث	searched	clean ينظف	cleaned
cool يبرد	cooled	destroy يدمر	destroyed
flood يفيض	flooded		

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sleep ينام	slept	drink يشرب	drank
grow ينمو	grew	freeze يتجمد	froze

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Water is in rivers, clouds, tears, or glasses.
- ✓ It can be calm or very strong.
- ✓ It stays in lakes and falls as rain.
- ✓ People drink it, bathe in it, and cry it.
- ✓ Plants and animals need water.
- ✓ Without water, life stops.
- ✓ It cleans, cools, and helps things grow.
- ✓ It also floods, freezes, or falls hard.
- ✓ It has no shape, but shapes the world.

الماء يوجد في الأنهار، السحب، الدموع، أو الأكواب.
يمكن أن يكون هادئاً أو قوياً جداً.
يستقر في البحيرات ويسقط كمطر.
يشربه الناس، ويستحمون به، ويبكونه.
النباتات والحيوانات تحتاج إلى الماء.
بدون الماء تتوقف الحياة.
الماء ينظف، يبرد، ويساعد على النمو.
وقد يسبب فيضانات، أو يتجمد، أو يسقط بشدة.
الماء ليس له شكل، لكنه يُشكّل العالم

I Am Water أنا الماء

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

If you were water, what would you say?

I am water. You might see me in a glass, a river, a cloud, or a **tear**⁽¹⁾. I can be quiet and still, or **wild**⁽²⁾ and crashing. I sleep in lakes and dance in the rain.



People drink me when they're thirsty, **bathe**⁽³⁾ in me when they're dirty, and cry me when they're hurt. Plants need me, animals **search for**⁽⁴⁾ me, and without me—life would stop.

Sometimes, I help. I clean. I cool. I grow things.

Sometimes, I **destroy**⁽⁵⁾. I flood. I **freeze**⁽⁶⁾. I fall too hard.

But I never stop moving. I am always part of something **greater**⁽⁷⁾—clouds, oceans, even **sweat**⁽⁸⁾.

I am water. I have no **shape**⁽⁹⁾, but I can shape the world.

(1)	دمعة
(2)	جامح / مضطرب
(3)	يستحم
(4)	يبحث عن
(5)	يدمر
(6)	يجمد
(7)	أعظم
(8)	عرق
(9)	شكل



Note

About 60 – 75 % of the human body is made of water.

حوالي 60% إلى 75% من جسم الإنسان يتكون من الماء.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write an object – perspective narrative

كيفية كتابة شيء ما - السرد القصصى

1 Write an introductory sentence.

اكتب جملة افتتاحية

e.g. I am water, flowing through rivers and resting in lakes.

2 Describe yourself as a non-living thing.

صف نفسك كشيء غير حي

e.g. I have no shape, but I fill every container. I am clear and refreshing.

3 Use adjectives to describe your appearance, actions, and purpose.

استخدم الصفات لوصف مظهرك وأفعالك وغايتك.

e.g. powerful, gentle

4 Write a closing sentence.

اكتب جملة ختامية

e.g. Without me, life wouldn't exist.

e.g. Write an object -perspective text of about (30 - 40) words about (gold):

I Am Gold

I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and admire me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am valuable. I am gold.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Water is the most important natural in the world.
a) food b) mineral c) resource d) animal
- 2 Without water, all living things would
a) grow b) live c) help d) die
- 3 Water helps grow.
a) people b) cars c) plants d) rocks
- 4 Water is used for drinking, cooking, and
a) running b) farming c) walking d) shopping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Water can be quiet and still, or wild and
a) sleeping b) crashing c) eating d) walking
- 2 People drink water when they're thirsty and in it when dirty.
a) freeze b) grow c) bathe d) throw
- 3 Plants need water, and animals for it.
a) search b) cry c) sing d) sleep
- 4 Without water, would stop.
a) work b) life c) time d) school
- 5 Water can destroy: it floods, it, and it falls too hard.
a) freezes b) waters c) grows d) helps
- 6 Water has no shape, but it can the world.
a) paint b) shape c) fill d) carry

Super Question ?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

valuable – gold – electrical – deep

I am copper. I am a red-brown metal. I come from (1) in the earth. Miners dig me out. I bend easily and carry electricity. I make (2) wires, and pipes. I am useful in homes and machines. I shine when clean. I get darker over time. I am not rare, but I am (3) I help people every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Lina read a book about water in class. Her teacher said water lives in many places—rivers, clouds, and tears. It can be still like in lakes or rivers or wild like in the sea or the ocean. People drink it, wash in it, and cry with it. Water helps flowers grow and animals live. But it can also flood, freeze, and fall hard. Later, Lina looked at her glass of water. It had no shape, but it could shape everything—plants, people, and even the sky.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
 a) Books b) Lina c) Water d) Floods
- 2 The underlined word "still" means
 a) crashing b) running c) falling d) not moving

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we find water?

- 4 How is water in seas and oceans?

- 5 How do people use water?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 why are you important

- 2 water can shape the world

6 Write an object – perspective text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

"I am copper."

strong metal – electrical wires – Eastern Desert



Unit 5

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	electricity	كهرباء
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	nature	طبيعة
water	ماء	farming	زراعة
soil	تربة	oil	نפט
minerals	معادن	natural gas	غاز طبيعي
fossil fuel	وقود أحفوري	wheat	قمح
wind	رياح	gold	ذهب
fertile	خصبة	iron	حديد

Lesson (2)

metal	معدن	diamond	الماس
copper	نحاس	jewelry	مجوهرات
rare	نادر	pipes	أنابيب
electrical	كهربائي	bridges	جسور
tools	أدوات	wires	أسلاك
miners	عمال المناجم	airplanes	طائرات
mineral resources	موارد معدنية	non-renewable	غير متجدد

Lesson (3)

digger	حفار	proud	فخور
load	يشحن / يحمل	shore	ساحل
cargo	بضائع	popular	مشهور
thick	سميك	mud	طين
give up	يستسلم	machines	آلات
path	طريق	clear	واضح
size	حجم	strength	قوة

Lessons (4 and 5)

tear	دمعة	quiet	هادئ
bathe	يستحم	dirty	قذر
destroy	يدمر	oceans	المحيطات
sweat	عرق	wild	جامح / مضطرب
cloud	سحابة	hurt	متألم
thirsty	عطشان	shape	شكل
greater	أعظم		

Language in Use

Comparative adjectives

A) Short adjectives:

short adjective + **er** + **than**



Gold is **shinier** than copper.

B) Long adjective:

more + long adjective + **than**



Diamond is **more** precious than iron.

Unit 5

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

natural resources

كهرباء

sunlight

طبيعة

soil

زراعة

minerals

نفط

fossil fuel

غاز طبيعي

wind

حديد

Lesson 2

metal

ألماس

copper

مجوهرات

rare

أنايب

electrical

جسور

tools

أسلاك

mineral resources

طائرات

Lesson 3

digger

ساحل

cargo

طين

path

آلات

size

واضح

thick

قوة

Lessons 4 and 5

tear

عطشان

sweat

المحيطات

cloud

شكل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

form

dug

clear

floated

search

rushed

destroy

got

freeze

danced

provided

waste

bothered

stare

cried

bathe

flooded

shape

sailed

admire



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "metals in our world".

- أمثلة للمعادن + Under the earth we can find precious metals like +
- We use them to make important things.
- استخدامات الذهب + We use gold to +
- استخدامات النحاس + We use copper to +
- استخدامات الحديد + We use iron to +
- We must use metals wisely.

"Metals in our world"

Under the earth we can find precious metals like gold, copper, and iron. We use them to make important things. We use gold to make rings and jewelry. We use copper to make electrical wires and pipes. We use iron to make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. We must use them wisely.

How to write an Object-Perspective Narrative about Iron".

- Write an introductory sentence. اكتب جملة افتتاحية.
- Describe yourself as a non-living thing. صف نفسك كشيء غير حي.
- Use adjectives to describe what you can do. استخدم الصفات لوصف ما يمكنك فعله.
- Write a closing sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

"Object-Perspective Narrative about Iron"

I am iron. I am strong and hard. I come from rocks deep in the earth. Miners dig me out. I make tools, cars, and bridges. I am useful. I do not break easily. I can get wet, but I can rust. I am heavy and gray. I help people every day. I am important and strong.

1 Match the words to their definitions:

1 natural resources

2 fertile

3 minerals

4 electricity

5 cotton

a) a soft, white plant that is used to make fabric

b) the energy used to power homes and machines

c) crystals and metals, like gold and copper

d) a land with rich soil to grow food

e) things from nature that help us live

2 Make sentences using the correct form of the word between brackets.

Example: Ali - Omar (tall)

Ali is taller than Omar.

1 winter - summer (cold)

.....

2 your new tablet – your old tablet (good)

.....

3 copper - gold (useful)

.....

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1 The digger was bigger than the ship. ()

2 The big ship did not get stuck in the mud. ()

3 Other big machines pulled the ship out of the mud. ()

4 The little digger helped the big ship. ()

5 The big ship was grateful and thanked the little digger. ()

6 The little digger said that size matters. ()



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I'm gold. I sleep deep under the, hidden and quiet.
a) sea b) sky c) earth d) bed
- 2 People for me, dream about me, and admire me.
a) cook b) search c) sing d) wait
- 3 I sit in the crowns of
a) kings b) doctors c) teachers d) farmers
- 4 I am soft and
a) heavy b) loud c) beautiful d) round



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 is an important resource that we can use to make solar energy.
a) Wind b) Sunlight c) Soil d) Water
- 2 The is a machine used for digging.
a) airplane b) digger c) cargo d) path
- 3 You can see water in clouds, rivers, or even
a) soil b) sweat c) wind d) fossil fuel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

admire – went – machines – thick

One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load some cargo. But then, something (1)..... wrong. It got too close and got stuck in the (2)....., heavy mud. The ship tried and tried to move, but it couldn't. Other big (3)..... rushed to help, but none of them could pull it out. Then, I saw everyone starting to give up. "I can help!" I said.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt's natural resources play a big role in its development. The Nile River is a key water source used for farming, drinking, and transport. Egypt also produces oil and natural gas, which are important for making fuel and electricity. Farmers grow cotton, fruits, and vegetables, especially in the fertile Nile Delta. The deserts of Egypt have valuable minerals like gold, iron, and phosphate. All these resources help people live better and support Egypt's economy and industries.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile River is used farming,, and transport.
a) economy b) drinking c) industries d) resources
- 2 The underlined word "fertile" means a soil to grow plants in.
a) bad b) poor c) sand d) good

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Egypt produce?
- 4 What do farmers grow?
- 5 Summarized the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 electrical – Copper – is used – making – for – wires.
.....
- 2 save – How – we – can – resources – non-renewable?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Gold is (soft) than iron.
- 2 Diamond is (expensive) than gold.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 What natural resources do we have in egypt
- 2 The nile River provides water for farming and drinking

8 Write a paragraph of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"I am iron"

deep under the earth – super strong – make cars





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 Ali sat near the river with his Max.

- a) dog b) cat c) lizard d) frog

2 flew over the lake.

- a) Planes b) Kites c) Birds d) Clouds

3 People came to drink,, and rest.

- a) eat b) bathe c) play d) run

4 Water was everywhere—clouds, rain, and even in

- a) fire b) hair c) sweat d) sand



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

1 The is the route or way for traveling.

- a) cargo b) mud c) path d) digger

2 Water and are renewable energy sources.

- a) fossil fuel b) wind c) oil d) natural gas

3 To is to take a shower.

- a) bathe b) destroy c) form d) fall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

miners – form – shiny – jewelry

I am diamond. I am very hard and (1)..... I come from deep under the earth. I take millions of years to (2)..... I am clear like glass. People cut and polish me to sparkle. I make beautiful (3)..... I am rare and expensive. Some use me in tools because I am strong. I am a symbol of love.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings! Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt. To get minerals, miners dig deep into the ground. But minerals are non-renewable, they take millions of years to form! We must use them wisely.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Cars and airplanes are
a) minerals b) metals c) vehicles d) jobs
- 2 Minerals take of years to form.
a) tens b) thousands c) ones d) millions

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we find minerals?
- 4 What are coins and rings made of?
- 5 What do people use iron for?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 is the – The Nile – most – water – resource – important – in Egypt.

2 waste – We – never – should – our – resources – natural.

4

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The sun is (**bright**) than the moon.
- 2 Miners are (**careful**) today than they were yesterday.

4

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 my uncle works for an oil company
- 2 there are fertile lands along the delta

7

8 Write a paragraph about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

“Treasures of Egypt”

natural resources – The Nile River – fuel and electricity



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهراس.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 This is my uncle (Sami – Hani – Ali – Omar).
- 2 He works for alan (soil – oil – coal – sugar) company.
- 3 They use oil to make (fuel – plastic – clothes – cars).

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

drinking – treasures – natural – oil

A: Can you name a (1)..... resource, we can find in Egypt?

B: The Nile River! It provides water for (2)..... and farming.

A: What other (3)..... does Egypt have?

B: We have (4)..... and natural gas.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Sara and her brother Karim visited their grandma's village. They saw a river with clear, moving water. Grandma said water can be quiet or wild. People use it to drink, bathe, and even cry. Plants need water, and animals search for it. Sometimes, water helps. Other times, it destroys. Rain came, and they danced in it. Water had no shape, but it changed the world.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 When did Sara and Karim visit grandma's village?
- 2 How do people use water?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Sara and Karim saw a (lake – sea – river – park) with moving water.
- 4 Plants need water and animals (grow – plant – eat – search) for it.
- 5 Water has no (shape – use – place – need).

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Farmers use the Nile's water to grow (oil – cotton – natural gas – electricity), wheat, and fruit.
- 2 Gold and (wind – natural gas – copper – diamond) are used for making coins and jewelry.
- 3 To (admire – load – shape – give up) is to stop trying.
- 4 The tower is (tall – taller – the tall – a tall) than the building.
- 5 Science is (more – much – many – must) interesting than history.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 are – Trees – and – water – natural – resources.

- 2 help – Natural – resources – in our – us – lives – daily.

- 3 along – There – fertile – are – lands – region – The Delta.

- 4 got – The – stuck – big – ship – in the – mud – thick.

- 5 life – Without – water – stop – would.

Unit

6

Fiction Reader

Story

The Talking Earth



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking

- ask and answer questions about the story.

- يطرح ويحجب عن الأسئلة المتعلقة بالقصة.

Writing

- rewrite the story from the heroine's perspective, demonstrating comprehension, and creative narrative skills.

- يعيد كتابة القصة من وجهة نظر البطلة، مع إظهار مهارات الفهم والسرد الإبداعي.

Reading

- answer comprehension questions about the story.
- analyze the elements of the story.
- answer critical thinking questions about the story.

- يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالقصة.

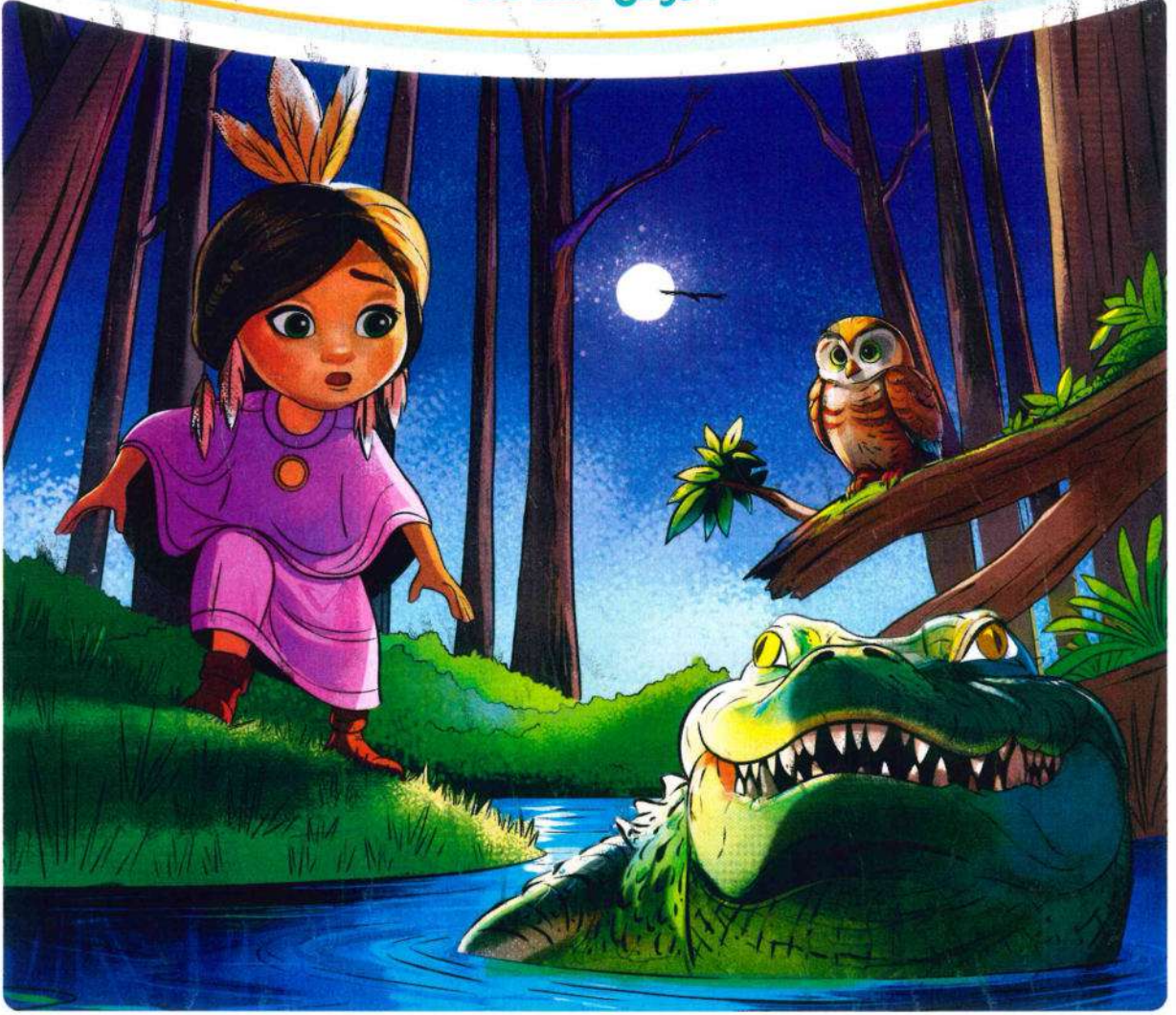
- يحلل عناصر القصة.

- يجيب عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي حول القصة.

The Talking Earth

Title
العنوان

الأرض المتحدثة



By: Jean Craighead George

Author
المؤلف

Warm-up

The Talking Earth is a story about a young Native American girl named **Billie Wind**. She goes on a journey alone in the **Everglades National Park** in Florida. At first, she doesn't believe that the Earth can "talk," but in the wild, she learns many lessons from nature. Billie learns to listen, and her journey changes her forever.

«الأرض المتكلمة» هي قصة عن فتاة شابة من السكان الأصليين لأمريكا تدعى بيلي ويند. تنطلق في رحلة بمفردها في حديقة إيفرجلادز الوطنية في فلوريدا. في البداية، لم تكن تعتقد أن الأرض قادرة على «التحدث»، ولكنها في الحياة البرية تعلمت، تعلمت العديد من الدروس من الطبيعة. تتعلم بيلي الاستماع، ورحلتها تغيرها إلى الأبد.



Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Everglades

منطقة إيفرجلادز



alligator

تمساح



the Earth

كوكب الأرض



canoe

قارب



owl

بومة



national park

محمية طبيعية



splash

يطرطش/يرتطم بسطح الماء



scientist

عالم



swamp

مستنقع



shell

صدفة

Definitions

native	ساكن أصلي	the first person who lived in a place	أول شخص عاش في مكان ما
tribe	قبيلة	a group of people who live together and share the same language, culture, and history	مجموعة من الأشخاص الذين يعيشون معًا ويتشاركون نفس اللغة والثقافة والتاريخ
elders	كبار القبيلة	older people who are wise and respected	كبار السن الحكماء والمحترمين
shelter	مأوى	a safe place that protects someone from bad weather or danger	مكان آمن يحمي الشخص من سوء الأحوال الجوية أو الخطر
survive	يحييا/ ينجو	to stay alive, especially in dangerous situations	للبقاء على قيد الحياة، وخاصة في المواقف الخطيرة
attack	يهاجم	to try to hurt someone	محاولة إيذاء شخص ما
struggle	يكافح	to have a hard time doing something	أن تجد صعوبة في القيام بشيء ما
wisdom	حكمة	using what you know to make good choices	استخدام ما تعرفه لاتخاذ خيارات جيدة
disappointed	محبط	feeling sad because something didn't happen as expected	أن تشعر بالحزن لأن شيئًا ما لم يحدث كما هو متوقع
hoot	صوت البومة	the sound an owl makes	الصوت الذي تصدره البومة
the wild	البرية	a place in nature where animals and plants live freely	مكان في الطبيعة تعيش فيه الحيوانات والنباتات بحرية
pack	يحزم الأمتعة	put things together to carry or take with you	أن تقرر بتجميع الأشياء معًا لحملها أو أخذها معك
swamp	مستنقع	wet, muddy area of land that has a lot of water, trees, and plants	منطقة رطبة وموحلة من الأرض بها الكثير من المياه والأشجار والنباتات



Story Elements

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Main characters

الشخصيات الرئيسية



Billie Wind
بيلى ويند



Billie's family
عائلة بيلي



The elders
كبار السن فى القبيلة

Setting

الإطار الزمنى والمكانى

Florida, the U.S.A.
فلوريدا، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

the early 1700s



Story



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وقم بتبادل الأدوار:



Billie Wind was a young **Native** American girl who lived in Florida. She loved science and dreamed of becoming a **scientist** when she grew up. But her family believed that **the Earth** could “talk” and share **wisdom** with those who listened to it. They said the wind, the water, and the animals all had something to teach. Billie did not believe this. She thought these were just old stories with no **real** meaning.

بيلى ويند كانت فتاة شابة من السكان الأصليين لأمريكا تعيش فى ولاية فلوريدا. كانت تحب العلوم وتحلم أن تصبح عالمة عندما تكبر. لكن عائلتها كانت تؤمن أن الأرض «تتحدث» وتشارك حكمتها مع من يستمع إليها. كانوا يقولون إن الرياح والماء والحيوانات كلها يمكن أن تعلمنا شيئًا. لكن بيلي لم تصدق ذلك، وكانت تظن أن هذه مجرد قصص قديمة لا معنى واقعى لها.

Extra vocabulary

Native	ساكن أصلى	scientist	عالم	the Earth	كوكب الأرض
wisdom	حكمة	real	حقيقى / واقعى		



One day, Billie Wind told the elders of her **tribe** that she did not believe that the Earth could talk. The elders were **disappointed**. They told Billie that if she did not **believe** what they said, then she should go into the **Everglades National Park** alone and listen to the Earth. Only then would she understand. Billie did not want to go, but she had no choice. She **packed** her **canoe** and went into the Everglades, not sure what she might find.

فى يوم من الأيام، قالت بيلى ويند لكبار السن فى قبيلتها إنها لا تصدق أن الأرض يمكنها أن تتحدث. شعر الكبار بخيبة أمل. وأخبروها أن عليها الذهاب وحدها إلى محمية إيفرجلادز وتستمتع إلى الأرض اذا كانت لا تصدق ما قالوه، فقط عندها ستفهم. لم تكن بيلى تريد الذهاب، لكن لم يكن أمامها خيار آخر. جهزت قاربها وانطلقت إلى إيفرجلادز، وهى لا تعرف ما الذى قد تكتشفه هناك.

Extra vocabulary

tribe	قبيلة	disappointed	محبط	believe	يصدق
Everglades National Park	حديقة إيفرجلادز الوطنية	packed	حزمت	canoe	قارب



At first, Billie **struggled** to survive in the Everglades. She had no **shelter**, no food, and no one to help her. The **swamp** was full of **strange** sounds, and she felt **afraid**. At night, she heard **alligators** splashing in the water and **owls** hooting in the trees. She wished she was back home, safe and warm. But slowly, she started to **pay attention** to the world around her.

فى البداية، واجهت بيلى صعوبة فى البقاء على قيد الحياة فى إيفرجلادز. لم يكن لديها مأوى، ولا طعام، ولا أحد يساعدها. كان المستنقع ملىء بالأصوات الغريبة، وقد شعرت بالخوف. فى الليل، كانت تسمع صوت تماسيح ترتطم بالماء، وطيور البوم تصدر أصواتاً من الأشجار. كانت تمنى لو أنها ترجع بيتها آمنة ودافئة. لكن ببطء، بدأت تنتبه للعالم من حولها.

Extra vocabulary

struggled	كافحت	shelter	مأوى	swamp	مستنقع
strange	غريب	afraid	خائف	alligators	تماسيح
owls	طيور البوم	pay attention	ينتبه		



She watched the animals closely and saw how they **survived**. The alligators waited **patiently** for their food instead of wasting energy. The turtles **hid** in their **shells** when danger was near. The birds warned each other when an animal came to **attack**. Billie realized that nature had its own way of teaching. She learned how to catch fish, make a fire, and find shelter, just like the animals did.

كانت بيلي تراقب الحيوانات عن قرب، وشاهدت كيف تحيا. التماسيح كانت تنتظر طعامها بصبر دون أن تضيع طاقتها. والسلاحف كانت تختبئ داخل أصدافها عندما تشعر بخطر قريب. والطيور كانت تحذر بعضها عندما يقترب حيوان مفترس. عندها أدركت بيلي أن الطبيعة لديها طريقتها الخاصة في التعليم. تعلمت كيف تصطاد السمك، وتشعل النار، وتبنى مأوى، تمامًا كما تفعل الحيوانات.

Extra vocabulary

survived	نجت/بقت على قيد الحياة	patiently	بصبر	hid	أصداق
attack	تهاجم	attack	تهاجم		



After many days in **the wild**, Billie Wind was no longer afraid. She learned how to survive, but more importantly, she learned how to listen. The Earth did talk, not with words, but through the sounds of the wind, the **movements** of animals, and the changes in the **land**. Everything in **nature** was **connected**, and if people did not take care of it, the **balance** would be broken.

بعد أيام كثيرة فى الحياة البرية، لم تعد بيلى ويند خائفة. لقد تعلمت كيف تعيش وتبقى آمنة، لكن الأهم من ذلك، أنها تعلمت كيف تستمع. لقد كانت الأرض تتحدث، ليس بالكلمات، بل من خلال أصوات الرياح، وحركات الحيوانات، والتغيرات فى اليابسة. كل شىء فى الطبيعة كان مرتبطاً ببعضه، وإذا لم يعتنِ الناس بها، فسوف يختل هذا التوازن.

Extra vocabulary

the wild	الحياة البرية	movements	حركات	land	الأرض/اليابسة
nature	الطبيعة	connected	متصل	balance	توازن



1 Read the descriptions. Then, write the correct character.

SB

- 1 They believed that the Earth could talk and share wisdom.
.....
- 2 She learned how to catch fish, make a fire, and find shelter.
.....
- 3 They told Billie to go into the Everglades National Park alone and listen to the Earth.
.....

2 Complete the story summary with these words:

SB

hooting — swamp — shells

Billie packed her canoe to go into the Everglades. The (1) was full of strange sounds. At night, she heard alligators splashing in the water and owls (2) in the trees. The turtles hid in their (3) when danger was near. The birds warned each other when an animal came to attack. Billie realized that nature had its own way of teaching.

3 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B):

SB

(A)

(B)

1 struggle	a. feeling sad because something didn't happen as expected
2 disappointed	b. wet, muddy area of land that has a lot of water
3 pack	c. the first person who lived in a place
4 swamp	d. to have a hard time doing something
5 native	e. put things together to carry or take with you

4 Read and put the events of the story in order:

SB

- ☐ Billie felt afraid when she first stayed alone in the Everglades.
- ☐ Billie went to the Everglades to listen to the Earth, as the elders told her.
- ☐ Billie learned how to survive by watching the animals and learned how to catch fish and make fire.
- ☐ Billie told the elders that she didn't believe that the Earth could talk.
- ☐ Billie started to listen to the world around her and pay attention to nature.
- ☐ Billie realized that the Earth talks through nature, like the wind and animals, not with words.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Billie saw some hooting in the trees. SB
 a) turtles b) dogs c) alligators d) owls
- 2 Billie had no shelter in the Everglades, so she struggled to SB
 a) survive b) pack c) teach d) attack
- 3 What is a tribe?
 a) A group of students b) A group of animals
 c) A group of people d) A group of old people
- 4 Billie felt at first in the Everglades.
 a) excited b) brave c) afraid d) bored
- 5 What lesson did Billie learn at the end of the story?
 a) Nature is dangerous b) The Earth talks through nature
 c) Science is not important d) Billie wants to go back home
- 6 Billie used a/an to go into the Everglades.
 a) tribe b) canoe c) alligator d) tree

6 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Billie Wind was a young Egyptian girl. ()
- 2 Billie dreamed of becoming a scientist. ()
- 3 At first, Billie didn't believe that the Earth could talk. ()
- 4 Billie heard hippos splashing in the water at night. ()
- 5 Turtles hid in their shells when danger was near. ()
- 6 Billie didn't learn anything at the end of her journey. ()
- 7 Everything in nature was connected. ()
- 8 Billie went to the desert to listen to the Earth. ()

7 Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where did Billie Wind live? SB

- 2 What lesson did Billie learn from nature? SB

- 3 Why did the elders send Billie into the Everglades? SB

- 4 How did Billie feel when she was alone in the Everglades? SB

- 5 How does the Earth talk?

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each Unit
- Story Exercises
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 15 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests

Units 1 & 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

water weeds	أعشاب مائية	energy	طاقة
hunt	يصطاد	owls	بوم
role	دور	balance	توازن
The Nile River	نهر النيل	hot	حار
crocodile	تمساح	desert	صحراء
protect	يحمي	dry	جاف
insects	حشرات	snake	ثعابين
life	حياة	rats	فئران
birds	طيور	lizards	سحالي
larger	أكبر	rocks	صخور
near	بالقرب من	cool	منتعش / بارد
colorful	ملون	cooler	أكثر برودة
tiny	صغير جدًا (ضئيل)	crown	تاج
huge	ضخم	trunk	جذع الشجرة
plants	نباتات	leaves	أوراق الشجر
creatures	مخلوقات	branches	فروع / أغصان
scary	مخيف	shade	ظل
important	هام	selfish	أناني
garden	حديقة	tasty	لذيذ
feelings	مشاعر	bowl	وعاء / طبق
delicious	لذيذ	garlic	ثوم
weak	ضعيف	vinegar	خل
friends	أصدقاء	pot	إناء / وعاء
needs	احتياجات	oil	زيت
koshari	كشري	crunchy	مقرمش
ingredients	مكونات / مقادير	chopped	مقطع / مفروم
flavor	نكهة / طعم	traditional	تقليدي
recipe	وصفة	lentils	عدس
spices	توابل	mix	مزيج / يخلط
yummy	شهي جدًا	flyer	منشور دعائي / مطوية

Unit 2

sports	الرياضة	journey	رحلة
football	كرة القدم	habits	عادات
heart	قلب	vitamins	فيتامينات
muscles	عضلات	weekends	عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
swimming	سباحة	chips	رقائق البطاطس (الشيبسي)
lungs	رئتان	burgers	برجر
tired	متعب	sweets	حلويات
stronger	أقوى	snacks	وجبات خفيفة
normal	طبيعي	organs	أعضاء
energy	طاقة	fist	قبضة اليد
bones	عظام	oxygen	أكسجين
regularly	بانتظام	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
tubes	أنابيب	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون
healthcare	رعاية صحية	blood vessels	أوعية دموية
paramedics	مسعفون	waste	فضلات / مخلفات
diagnose	يشخص	cell	خلية
pharmacists	صيادلة	knowledge	معرفة
heroes	أبطال	diseases / illnesses	أمراض
real-life	حقيقي	treatment	علاج
patients	مرضى	emergencies	حالات طوارئ
support	دعم	respect	احترام
medicine	دواء	kindness	لطف
harmful	ضار		

Practice



on Vocabulary Units 1&2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I enjoy eating my sister's food, she prepares meals.
a) bad b) delicious c) tasteless d) boring
- 2 Camels are called animals.
a) water b) land c) ground d) desert
- 3 The king wears a on his head.
a) crown b) hat c) cap d) scarf
- 4 I don't know how to make koshari, could you tell me the?
a) pieces b) recipe c) treat d) place
- 5 It takes me 10 minutes to arrive at work, it's really
a) far b) further c) near d) away
- 6 Amina watched a movie, she was afraid.
a) funny b) happy c) scary d) comedy
- 7 Lizards eat insects in the desert to get
a) money b) energy c) hungry d) moving
- 8 Cats rats.
a) play b) run c) make d) hunt
- 9 Amira walked in the to stay cool during the hot weather.
a) heat b) warm c) hot d) shade
- 10 To cook pasta, you need to water first.
a) remove b) boil c) cool d) allow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

recipe – chops – mixes – boils

Sarah likes to cook delicious meals. Her pasta (1) is very easy to make. First, she (2) water in a pot and adds the pasta. Then, she makes the red sauce. She chops tomatoes and adds it in another pot with some oil. When the pasta is ready, she (3) it with the sauce and eats it hot.

B)

energy – survive – plants – water

Animals are amazing creatures. They learn to (1) in different places. Camels eat (2) to stay strong in the desert. Lizards eat insects to get (3) Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Eating healthy foods gives you all the important you need.
a) vitamins b) fruits c) sports d) habits
- 2 The help us to breathe by taking in oxygen and removing carbon dioxide.
a) heart b) bones c) lungs d) hands
- 3 Good like reading and sleeping early can help you stay healthy.
a) games b) organs c) habits d) events
- 4 Playing helps children stay active and learn teamwork.
a) support b) sports c) port d) exercise
- 5 make sure patients receive the correct medicine.
a) Paramedics b) Pharmacists c) Workers d) Patients
- 6 Blood takes away like carbon dioxide.
a) waste b) trash c) leftovers d) oxygen
- 7 The heart is the size of a/an
a) hand b) leg c) ear d) fist
- 8 Good friends each other in difficult times.
a) avoid b) play c) ignore d) support
- 9 help people in emergencies and take them to the hospital quickly.
a) Patients b) Pharmacists c) Nurses d) Paramedics
- 10 We should always show to our parents and teachers.
a) respect b) energy c) muscles d) fist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

patient – diagnosed – treatment – nurses

Last week, Adel was sick, so he went to the hospital. The doctor (1) him and advised him to stay for a day to do some tests. He gave him (2) The (3) were very supportive. Before leaving, Adel went to get the medicine and the pharmacist explained to him how and when to take it.

B)

muscles – swimming – fit – reduce

Following healthy habits is very important. Amir plays football to grow his (1) and increase his energy. Mariam practices swimming to make her strong. Sports make us (2) Exercising regularly helps (3) stress.

Units 1&2



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

Adverbs of frequency

- We use **adverbs of frequency** to talk about **how often** something happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتحدث عن مدى تكرار حدوث شيء ما.

always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely	never
100%	90%	70%	50%	20%	0%

Form:

التكوين:

لاحظ ظروف التكرار تسبق الفعل:

Subject (فاعل) + **adverbs of frequency** (ظروف التكرار) + main verb (الفعل الأساسي)

e.g. I **always** go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:

Subject (فاعل) + verb to be (am/ is/ are) + **adverbs of frequency** (ظروف التكرار)

e.g. I'm **always** in bed at 11 pm.

Unit 2

Determiners

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.
- تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ies).

e.g. **an** onion – onions

a mango – mangoes

ويمكن أن يأتي الجمع غير ذلك مثل:

(أطفال **children** – طفل **a child**)

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ولا تجمع ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد مثل: (is - was - has).
- لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

e.g. rice – cheese – water – milk

1. Indefinite Articles أدوات النكرة

a

تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن:

- e.g. - I have **a** new book.
 - Did you see **a** monkey?
 - I'm not **a** doctor.

an

تستخدم (an) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u):

- e.g. - She is eating **an** apple.
 - Do you want **an** orange?
 - It isn't **an** insect.

some/ any with the plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

(some) و (any) مع الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة.

2. Quantifiers محددات الكميات

1. **some** اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد +

Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

e.g. I have **some** apples.

Offer/ Request العرض / الطلب

e.g. A: Would you like **some** apples?
 B: Yes, please.

2. **any** اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد +

Negative sentence الجملة المنفية

e.g. There aren't **any** apples left.

Question السؤال

e.g. Do you have **any** water?

**Note**

لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات قد تبدأ بحرف ساكن ولكن يسبقها **an** وذلك لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك مثل :

e.g. **an** hour

Practice



on Grammar Units 1 & 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Nada follows a healthy habit. She exercises before going to school.
a) never b) rarely c) always d) often
- 2 Omar is very healthy because he eats fast food.
a) usually b) always c) never d) often
- 3 Hazem is honest. He tells lies.
a) never b) sometimes c) always d) usually
- 4 We go to the beach in the summer. We go every summer.
a) always b) never c) rarely d) sometimes
- 5 I watch TV during the week. Maybe once a week.
a) rarely b) often c) some days d) every day
- 6 He wears a helmet when biking to avoid injuries.
a) never b) rarely c) doesn't d) always
- 7 She watch scary movies. She gets scared easily.
a) always b) never c) often d) sometimes
- 8 My parents watch the news at night. They don't do it every day.
a) always b) often c) rarely d) never
- 9 Amira is a good student. She comes to school late.
a) usually b) always c) never d) often
- 10 It rains in summer in Egypt. The weather is very dry.
a) always b) usually c) rarely d) never

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (never) take the bus to school to reduce crowding.
- 2 She (always) eats sweets. Her mother doesn't buy any for her.
- 3 I (miss never) the bus every morning.
- 4 He (always) does his homework late at night. He always sleeps early.
- 5 We (usually eats) rice with lunch.
- 6 They (always are) on time.
- 7 Mona (sometimes going) camping in the desert.
- 8 Ahmed (always helping) his father.
- 9 Eman (never drink) coffee at night.
- 10 We (have sometimes) pizza for dinner.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I saw dog in the park.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 2 She ate apple for breakfast.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 3 He is smart man.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 4 Do you have umbrella? It's raining heavily.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 5 He watched old movie.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 6 She bought bananas from the market.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 7 Can I have water, please?
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 8 We have friends coming over.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 9 Do you have juice left?
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 10 He didn't buy tickets.
a) an b) a c) any d) some

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We don't have (some) clean clothes.
- 2 There are (any) pencils on the table.
- 3 Reem saw (a) elephant at the zoo.
- 4 They found (any) coin on the street.
- 5 Mom made (a) sandwiches for lunch.
- 6 I don't have (some) homework today.
- 7 Did you see (some) birds in the tree?
- 8 He took (any) money from his wallet.
- 9 Heba likes watching (an) scary movie every week.
- 10 She has (an) blue pen.

Units 3 & 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

weather	طقس	stuck	عالق
news	أخبار	rich soil	تربة خصبة
terrible	فظيع / مرعب	canals	قنوات مائية
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	basins	أحواض
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	smart	ذكي
flood	فيضان	mud bricks	الطوب اللبن
drought	جفاف	irrigation systems	نظم الري
wildfire	حرائق الغابات	pond	بركة / مستنقع
heat wave	موجة حارة	well	بئر
lightning	برق	flies	ذباب
dry	جاف	frog	ضفدع
dust	تراب	leap	يقفز
rain	مطر	wing	جناح
temperature	درجة الحرارة	movement	حركة
damaged	متضرر / تالف	whisper	همسة
land	أرض	flip	ينقلب
winds	رياح	clap	يصفق
mountains	جبال	imagination	مخيلة / تخيلات

Unit 4

loaves	أرغفة عيش	community center	مركز مجتمعي
restaurant	مطعم	barns	حظائر
coffee shop	مقهى	main square	الساحة الرئيسية
bakery	مخبز	hills	تلال
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	cozy	مريح
club	نادي	calm	هادئ
theme park	حديقة ملاهي	capital	عاصمة
groceries	بقالة	government offices	مكاتب حكومية
fresh	طازج	Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني
groceries	بقالة	steel	صلب / فولاذ
relaxing	مريح	friendly	ودود
neighborhood	حي سكني	village	قرية
air	هواء	fields	حقول
hang out	يتسكع / يقضي الوقت مع	cottage	كوخ



Practice

on Vocabulary Units 3 & 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile gives Egypt soil.
a) poor b) sick c) rich d) modern
- 2 We should stay in the during the heat wave.
a) hot b) shade c) farms d) cave
- 3 The sky lit up with bright during the thunderstorm.
a) flood b) lightning c) drought d) sandstorm
- 4 The table was covered with after being left for weeks.
a) dust b) rust c) must d) crust
- 5 Farmers use to collect and store rainwater for their crops.
a) pots b) plates c) bowls d) basins
- 6 Boats are on the river.
a) clapping b) flipping c) sleeping d) floating
- 7 The workers a hole to plant the tree.
a) built b) bug c) dug d) create
- 8 happened when there was not enough rain.
a) Sandstorms b) Drought c) Flood d) Heat
- 9 He spoke in a so no one else could hear.
a) whisper b) cry c) loud d) sound
- 10 My shoe got in the mud while walking.
a) carried b) stuck c) down d) crowded

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

dry – cool – leaped – pond

Bob is a small frog. One day, the pond it lived in became (1) because of the hot weather. Bob wanted to find a new home to live in. Bob (2) from one well to the other. Finally, Bob found a small village that had a new (3) to swim in.

B)

flooded – drought – soil – crops

In Ancient Egypt, the weather made farming possible. The Nile (1) every year. The water brought rich (2) This was great for growing (3) and farming. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We met our friends at the to drink coffee together.
a) restaurant b) hospital c) coffee shop d) village
- 2 The children were so excited to spend the day at the to go on rides.
a) theme park b) community c) library d) school
- 3 After a long day at school, I like to and read a book.
a) stress b) impress c) relax d) sleep
- 4 The bridge was built using strong to support heavy cars.
a) mud b) steel c) coal d) plastic
- 5 If you want to buy groceries, go to the
a) club b) supermarket c) restaurant d) school
- 6 My cat loves sleeping in her bed.
a) cozy b) dirty c) high d) fresh
- 7 The bakery makes fresh of bread every morning.
a) parts b) pieces c) loaves d) leaves
- 8 They spent the weekend in a small by the lake in their uncle's village.
a) cottage b) coffee shop c) luggage d) restaurant
- 9 The new school building was opened to crowding in classrooms.
a) increase b) add c) reduce d) improve
- 10 The farmer keeps many animals in the big
a) house b) apartment c) village d) barn

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

bread – neighborhood – bakery – park

Last week, it was my brother's birthday. We needed to buy a big cake for him. Luckily, the (1) we live in has many shops around us. A new (2) opened recently, so we went there. They had so many things to buy! They even make fresh (3) every day.

B)

cottage – barn – fresh – house

My family and I went to visit our uncle. He lives in a cozy (1) in a small village. It has green fields and quiet hills. My uncle has many animals that he keeps in his (2) The air in the village is (3) We had so much fun!



Unit 3

The Past Simple Tense

- We use the past simple tense to talk about finished actions or events in the past.
نستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأفعال التي انتهت في الماضي.

Affirmative Form:

✓ Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. - They **went** to the cinema.

- I **rode** a horse last weekend.

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها
(ed)

e.g. rain - **rained**

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف
لها (d)

e.g. use → **used**

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن،
يُحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ed)

e.g. study → **studied**

الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد المنتهية بـ
(a, e, i, o, u) بعده حرف ساكن، يضاف
لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:

e.g. stop → **stopped**

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

أفعال تتغير في زمن الماضي البسيط (تحفظ) مثل:

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	find يجد	found	make يصنع	made
has/ have يمتلك	had	am/ is يكون (للمفرد)	was	are يكون (للمجمع)	were

Negative Form:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر ...

- e.g. - The Ancient Egyptians **didn't have** modern tools to help them.
- They **didn't go** to the club.

Keywords:

في الماضي **in the past** - منذ **ago** - الماضي **last** - أمس **yesterday**

Prepositions of Time

We use **on** before:

نستخدم (on) قبل:

Days of the week

أيام الأسبوع

e.g. I go swimming **on** Mondays.
أذهب للسباحة أيام الإثنين.

Dates

تواريخ

e.g. My birthday is **on** June 1st.
عيد ميلادي في الأول من يونيو.

On the weekend

في نهاية الأسبوع

e.g. We go shopping **on** the weekend.
نذهب للتسوق في نهاية الأسبوع.

We use **at** before:

نستخدم (at) قبل:

Clock times

الأوقات

e.g. Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
تهبط رحلتنا الساعة ٨ مساءً.

Mealtimes

أوقات الوجبات

e.g. We play basketball **at** lunchtime.
نلعب كرة السلة في وقت الغداء.

Time phrases

عبارات زمنية

e.g. I go to bed **at** night.
أذهب للسرير في الليل.

We use **in** before:

نستخدم (in) قبل:

Months

الشهور

e.g. We visit our cousins **in** June.
نזור أبناء عمي في شهر يونيو.

Seasons

فصول السنة

e.g. We went on vacation **in** the summer.
ذهبنا في إجازة في الصيف.

Years

السنوات

e.g. I was born **in** 2010.
ولدت عام.

Parts of the day

أجزاء اليوم

e.g. They arrived **in** the morning.
وصلوا في الصباح.



Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I my grandma last weekend.
a) visits b) visiting c) is visiting d) visited
- 2 I breakfast this morning.
a) didn't ate b) didn't eat c) don't eating d) eats
- 3 What she cook for dinner yesterday?
a) does b) do c) did d) was
- 4 you in France last summer?
a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Is
- 5 They football after school.
a) played b) plays c) playing d) is playing
- 6 He didn't the message I sent him.
a) sees b) seeing c) saw d) see
- 7 Who you meet at the park yesterday?
a) does b) did c) doing d) is
- 8 she at school last week?
a) Was b) Were c) Is d) Did
- 9 Amira miss the bus this morning?
a) Were b) Was c) Did d) Is
- 10 She a movie last night.
a) watching b) watches c) watch d) watched

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (traveling) to Luxor in January 2021.
- 2 (Were) they win the game last week?
- 3 He (buys) a new phone yesterday.
- 4 She (don't) go to the party last night.
- 5 Why did he (crying) during the film?
- 6 We (don't) finish the last project on time.
- 7 Where did you (went) on the last holiday?
- 8 When did they (arrives) at the station?
- 9 They (not enjoyed) the show last night.
- 10 Did you (reading) the book?

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I have a meeting Monday.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 2 The movie starts 6 pm.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 3 I brush my teeth the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 4 We went to the beach Saturday.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 5 It gets cold December.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 6 We traveled a lot summer.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 7 The bell rang the end of the lesson.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 8 The train leaves 8:30 in the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 9 She was born April 5th.
a) in b) on c) at d) by
- 10 She arrived lunchtime.
a) in b) on c) at d) by

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 They visit us (in) weekends.
- 2 His birthday party will be (at) Friday.
- 3 I like to relax (at) the evening.
- 4 I wake up (in) 7 o'clock every day.
- 5 He goes to sleep (on) midnight.
- 6 I will call you (at) the afternoon.
- 7 She was born (on) July.
- 8 We visited Spain (at) 2022.
- 9 I like walking (on) the morning.
- 10 People prefer traveling (at) winter.

Unit 5



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	minerals	معادن
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	iron	حديد
water	ماء	jewelry	مجوهرات
soil	تربة	diamond	ألماس
treasures	كنوز	rare	نادر
fossil fuel	وقود أحفوري	valuable	قيم
wind	رياح	metal	معدن
non-renewable	غير متجدد	wires	أسلاك
bridge	جسور	pipes	أنابيب
machines	آلات	size	حجم
gold	ذهب	miners	عمال المناجم
copper	نحاس	shore	ساحل
oil	نفط	mud	طين
tools	أدوات	digger	حفار
electrical	كهربائي	load	يشحن/ يحمل
cotton	القطن	cargo	بضائع
wheat	قمح	give up	يستسلم
fertile	خصبة	path	طريق
tear	دمعة	destroy	يدمر
bathe	يستحم	sweat	عرق

Unit 6

Everglades	منطقة إيفرغلديز	alligator	تمساح
the Earth	كوكب الأرض	canoe	قارب
owl	بومة	national park	محمية طبيعية
splash	يطرطش (يرتطم بسطح الماء)	scientist	عالم
swamp	مستنقع	shell	صدفة

Practice



on Vocabulary Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 resources like water and trees are important for the environment.
a) Man-made b) Fossil c) Non-renewable d) Natural
- 2 Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.
a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
- 3 is a soft fabric used to make clothes.
a) Cloth b) Cotton c) Diamond d) Silver
- 4 Engineers use to make tools, machines, and buildings because of its strength.
a) iron b) silver c) gold d) diamond
- 5 Women wear which is made of gold, silver, or diamond.
a) hats b) jewelry c) scarves d) caps
- 6 Some minerals are and can only be found in few places in the world.
a) common b) local c) international d) rare
- 7 Gold is a metal.
a) rare b) cheap c) valuable d) renewable
- 8 The truck carried a heavy of boxes to the market.
a) load b) road c) code d) mode
- 9 The is a machine or tool used for digging.
a) trigger b) bigger c) digger d) figure
- 10 He began to after running in the hot sun.
a) sweet b) sweat c) met d) net

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

steel – fuel – energy – renewable

My father bought a new car that has cool features. It is made of (1) and it's bigger than our old car. It doesn't use (2) and it runs on electricity. This is good for our environment. We should use less non-renewable (3) to protect our planet.

B)

mineral – Gold – rare – cheap

In our science class, the teacher told us many things today. We learned about (1) resources. (2) is soft and shiny and it's used in making jewelry. Diamond is a (3) mineral which makes it valuable. Copper is a strong metal that we use in electrical wires and pipes.



Comparative Adjectives

- Comparative Adjectives are used to compare two people, things, animals, or things.
تُستخدم الصفات المقارنة لمقارنة شخصين أو حيوانين أو شيئين مختلفين.

A) Short adjectives:

عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد) نضع (er + than) بعد الصفة.
لاحظ الصفات الآتية عند إضافة (er).

short adjective + er + than صفة قصيرة

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than).

old → older

small → smaller

e.g. Gold is cheaper than diamond.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (r) وبعدها (than).

large → larger

nice → nicer

e.g. Cats are nicer than dogs.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier) وبعدها (than).

heavy → heavier

angry → angrier

e.g. Amira is happier than Mohamed.

الصفات المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، يضاف لها (er) وبعدها (than) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.

big → bigger

thin → thinner

e.g. Elephants are bigger than lions.

B) Long adjectives:

عند المقارنة بين شيئين باستخدام الصفات الطويلة (ذات مقطعين أو أكثر) نضع (more / less أقل) قبل الصفة ويضاف بعدها (than).

e.g. dangerous / colorful / beautiful / delicious ...

more + long adjective + than الصفة الطويلة

e.g. Diamond is more precious than copper.



Note

توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة ويتغير شكلها عند استخدامها كصفة مقارنة:

little → less than

e.g. I have less money than my brother.

many / much → more than

e.g. January has more days than February.

Practice



on Grammar Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My bag is than Youmna's.
a) lighting b) lighter c) lightest d) light
- 2 She runs than her brother.
a) fast b) fastest c) fasting d) faster
- 3 This book is interesting than the last one.
a) more b) most c) much d) the most
- 4 Today is than yesterday.
a) cool b) cold c) cooling d) cooler
- 5 His explanation was than the teacher.
a) clearing b) clearest c) clearer d) clear
- 6 That mountain is than the one we climbed.
a) taller b) tall c) the tallest d) tallest
- 7 The couch is than the old one.
a) more comfortable b) the comfortable c) comfortable d) most comfortable
- 8 The test was than I expected.
a) easy b) easiest c) the easier d) easier
- 9 My phone is than yours.
a) smaller b) small c) smallest d) the small
- 10 The blue dress is prettier the red dress.
a) thin b) then c) the d) than

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 This road is (narrowest) than the highway.
- 2 He is (much) polite than his cousin.
- 3 Apples are (healthy) than candy.
- 4 The movie was longer (then) the book.
- 5 She looks (happiest) today than she was yesterday.
- 6 This restaurant is (most) expensive than the one near school.
- 7 My cat is (quietest) than his dog.
- 8 His house is bigger (thin) mine.
- 9 These shoes are (cheap) than the boots.
- 10 Your phone is (many) expensive than mine.

Unit 6

Story Corner

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Billie and her family are the main of the story.
a) characters b) setting c) idea d) author
- 2 Which of the following is not an animal that Billie saw in the Everglades?
a) Owls b) Tigers c) Alligators d) Turtles
- 3 Billie traveled to the Everglades using her
a) car b) horse c) bike d) canoe
- 4 "The Talking Earth" is set in
a) India b) France c) Egypt d) Florida
- 5 Who didn't believe that the Earth could talk?
a) Billie b) The elders c) Billie's father d) Billie's mother

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 "The Talking Earth" shows us that the Earth can teach us lessons. ()
- 2 The setting of the story is in America. ()
- 3 Billie was happy to go to the Everglades alone. ()
- 4 Billie saw a small cottage in the Everglades. ()
- 5 Billie learned many lessons from the animals around her. ()

3 Read and complete the summary with the words in the box:

SB

catch – elders – Earth – Everglades – alligators

Billie Wind was a young Native American girl who loved science. She did not believe that the Earth could "talk" like the (1) said. To prove her wrong, they sent her to the (2) alone. At first, Billie struggled, but she learned from the animals. She heard (3) splashing in the water. In the end, Billie realized that the (4) did talk in a different way. She learned how to (5) fish and make fire like the animals.

4 Answer the following questions:

1 Who is the main character in "The Talking Earth"?

2 Where does Billie Wind live?

3 What does Billie love to study?

4 Why didn't Billie believe her family's stories?

5 What did the elders ask Billie to do?

6 Where did Billie go alone?

7 How did Billie feel at the beginning of her journey?

8 What animals did Billie hear at night?

9 What did Billie learn from the alligators?

10 How did the birds help each other in the wild?

11 What did Billie learn to do to survive?

12 Why did the elders send Billie to the Everglades?

13 What did Billie realize about nature?

14 How did Billie change by the end of the story?

15 What is the main message of the story?



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة					
Present		Past	Present		Past
flow	يتدفق	flowed	encourage	يشجع	encouraged
survive	ينجو	survived	thank	يشكر	thanked
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	cover	يغطي	covered
protect	يحمي	protected	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
live	يعيش	lived	flood	يفيض	flooded
stay	يبقي	stayed	burn	يحترق	burned
name	يُسمي	named	stop	يوقف	stopped
rest	يستريح	rested	happen	يحدث	happened
travel	يسافر	traveled	call	يسمى/يدعى	called
realize	يُدرك / يلاحظ	realized	solve	يحل	solved
water	يروي / يسقي	watered	decide	يقرر	decided
use	يستخدم	used	agree	يتفق	agreed
climb	يتسلق	climbed	dry	يجف	dried
pass	يمر	passed	leap	يقفز	leaped
care for	يعتنى/يهتم بـ	cared for	search	يبحث	searched
cook	يطبخ	cooked	float	يطفو	floated
boil	يغلي	boiled	whisper	يهمس	whispered
add	يضيف	added	clap	يصفق	clapped
turn	يتحول / يُصبح	turned	fix	يصلح	fixed
prepare	يُحضّر	prepared	flip	ينقلب	flipped
fry	يقلّي	fried	try	يجرب	tried
pour	يصب / يسكب	poured	pick out	ينتقي/يختار	picked out
need	يحتاج	needed	shop	يتسوق	shopped
exercise	يمارس الرياضة	exercised	reduce	يقلل	reduced
share	يشارك	shared	design	يصمم	designed
bake	يخبز	baked	manage	يدير	managed
change	يغير	changed	talk	يتحدث	talked
grill	يشوي	grilled	name	يسمي	named
follow	يتبع	followed	contain	يحتوي	contained
carry	يحمل	carried	provide	يوفر	provided
help	يساعد	helped	waste	يضيع	wasted

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
diagnose	يشخص	diagnosed	form	يتكون	formed
check	يفحص	checked	shape	يتشكل	shaped
receive	يستقبل	received	admire	يعجب ب	admired
respond	يستجيب	responded	sail	يبحر	sailed
treat	يعالج	treated	rush	يسرع	rushed
provide	يقدم / يوفر	provided	bother	يضايق	bothered
watch	يشاهد	watched	laugh	يضحك	laughed
stare	يحدق	stared	destroy	يدمر	destroyed
clear	يزيل	cleared	smile	يبتسم	smiled
dance	يرقص	danced	bathe	يستحم	bathed
cry	يبكي	cried	need	يحتاج	needed
cool	يبرد	cooled	clean	ينظف	cleaned

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتي	came	spread	ينتشر	spread
find	يجد	found	bring	يحضّر / يجلب	brought
give	يعطي	gave	strike	يضرب / يفضض	struck
hide	يختبئ	hid	build	يبنى	built
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught
bend	ينحني	bent	swim	يسبح	swam
begin	يبدأ	began	leave	يغادر	left
become	يُصبح	became	shine	يشرق	shone
cut	يُقطع	cut	hang out	يتسكع	hung out
put	يضع	put	buy	يشترى	bought
grow	ينمو	grew	feel	يشعر	felt
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	meet	يقابل	met
eat	يأكل	ate	freeze	يتجمد	froze
drink	يشرب	drank	have	يملك	had
keep	يحافظ على / يبقى	kept	dig	يحفر	dug
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	sleep	ينام	slept

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 live in the Nile River.
a) People b) Animals c) Boats d) Cars
- 2 swim in the Nile.
a) Crocodiles b) Eagles c) Tigers d) Lions
- 3 Insects live near the on the riverbank.
a) deserts b) trees c) rocks d) plants
- 4 The Nile is a place full of life.
a) clean b) small c) noisy d) beautiful



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Birds often sit on the of trees.
a) roots b) seeds c) branches d) flowers
- 2 The king wasn't He shared his gold with everyone.
a) soft b) alone c) selfish d) greedy
- 3 The is the main, thick part of a tree supporting its branches and leaves.
a) root b) trunk c) leaf d) seed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

tea – energy – water – vegetables

To stay healthy, we must take care of our bodies. We should eat fruits and (1) every day. Drinking (2) helps our bodies work well. It is also important to get enough sleep at night. Good sleep gives us (3) for the next day. We must also keep our bodies clean and brush our teeth.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

We can stay healthy by doing good things every day. Wash your hands before and after eating to keep them clean. Eat fruits and vegetables regularly to help your body grow strong. Drink enough water daily to stay fresh. Exercise regularly to make your body strong. Sleep early and get enough rest so you have energy. Brush your teeth daily with toothpaste to keep them clean. These easy steps help you stay healthy, happy, and full of energy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Drink enough daily to stay fresh.
a) soda b) juice c) water d) mango
- 2 Sleep early and get enough so you have energy
a) food b) money c) books d) rest

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When should we brush our hands?
- 4 Why should we eat vegetables and fruits regularly?
- 5 What should you use to brush your teeth?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 meal – is – Koshari – tasty – a – Egyptian.

- 2 energy – eat – Lizards – insects – get – to.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Snakes (always) eat plants.
- 2 I need (any) coffee, please.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Omar and yasser are good friends
- 2 what's your job

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"How to make Koshari"

First, – Then,

.....

.....

.....

Story

Who are the three main characters in "The Talking Earth"?

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 helps your muscles and makes you strong.
a) Tennis b) Football c) Chess d) Reading
- 2 Exercise increases and improves mental health.
a) weight b) money c) energy d) water
- 3 Exercise also stress.
a) increases b) reduces c) makes d) gives
- 4 When you play a sport, you feel
a) sad b) tired c) angry d) happy



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 are the organs in your chest that help you breathe.
a) Ears b) Muscles c) Lungs d) Legs
- 2 "....." means being healthy and strong because you exercise.
a) Fat b) Fit c) Stressed d) Muscles
- 3 A can prevent farmers from growing food.
a) soil b) water c) drought d) pet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

camels – insects – strong – hot

Some animals live in the desert. The desert is very (1) during the day. Camels are big animals that store water and walk long distances. They eat plants to stay (2) Lizards eat (3), which give them energy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Healthcare heroes help us stay safe and healthy. Doctors take care of sick people and give them treatment. Pharmacists make sure patients receive the right medicine. Paramedics drive fast to help people in emergencies. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients. They wear special clothes to stay safe and help others. We must thank them by caring for our health and showing them respect.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about heroes.
a) football b) healthcare c) tennis d) police
- 2 take care of sick people.
a) Drivers b) Teachers c) Doctors d) Patients

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who are the four healthcare heroes in the text?
.....
- 4 What do pharmacists do?
.....
- 5 How can we thank healthcare heroes?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 breathe – is – Oxygen – that – a gas – we.

2 grapes – buy – I – some – to – want.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 I don't have (some) pens to write the lesson.

2 It (never) rains in winter.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 Rana and reem live in cairo.

2 do you like apples

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"How to stay healthy"

healthy food – doing sports

.....

.....

.....

Story

The setting of "The Talking Earth" is

- a) Florida b) Egypt c) France d) Mexico



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 A sandstorm blows everywhere.
a) water b) soil c) sand d) trees
- 2 A happens when there is too much water.
a) flood b) sandstorm c) drought d) wildfire
- 3 A drought is when there is no for a long time.
a) food b) sand c) money d) rain
- 4 A wildfire burns and grass.
a) trees b) rivers c) cars d) water



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 I was in my car during the storm. I couldn't move.
a) happy b) stuck c) cold d) sad
- 2 Earth is the where we live.
a) money b) sky c) plant d) planet
- 3 Fruit and vegetables give us a lot of
a) protein b) soda c) vitamins d) fats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

square – meeting – animals – cottages

Life in the village is quiet and peaceful. In the middle, there is a small (1)..... where people meet every day. Children play while parents sit and talk. Farmers keep their (2)..... in barns. On the hill, you can see small (3)..... made of wood.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am water. You might see me in a glass, a river, a cloud, or a tear. I can be quiet and still, or wild and crashing. People drink me when they're thirsty, bathe in me, and cry me. Plants need me, animals search for me, and without me, life would stop. Sometimes, I help. I clean, I cool, I grow things. Sometimes, I destroy. I flood, I freeze. I never stop moving. I have no shape, but I can shape the world.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Water can be wild and
a) slow b) quiet c) calm d) crashing
- 2 Water stops.
a) sometimes b) always c) never d) often

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we see water?
- 4 When do people drink water?
- 5 What would happen if there was no water?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 pond – lived – The – frogs – two – a small – in.
.....

- 2 well – water – full – The – was – of.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I (visit) Aswan last month.

- 2 Aya was born (at) 2015.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 we don't go to school on fridays.

- 2 everyone admired the big ship

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The weather in Ancient Egypt"

droughts – sandstorms

.....

.....

.....

Story

The Everglades is a

- a) national park b) native Indian tribe
- c) national mountain d) national river



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 We buy food from the
a) library b) club c) school d) supermarket
- 2 Children play in the
a) bakery b) park c) supermarket d) mosque
- 3 People read books at the
a) park b) coffee shop c) library d) bakery
- 4 We go to the bakery to buy
a) books b) clothes c) bread d) coffee



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We stayed in a cozy during our holiday in the mountains.
a) tower b) cottage c) city d) class
- 2 The waiter brought some delicious fish at the
a) supermarket b) coffee shop c) restaurant d) library
- 3 If you want to buy sugar, tea, and rice, go to the
a) supermarket b) club c) post office d) library

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

rain – irrigation – Crops – rich

The weather in Ancient Egypt was usually hot and dry. Droughts happened when there was not enough (1) The Nile's water became low, and the land became dry. (2) could not grow. To solve this, the Ancient Egyptians made (3) systems to bring water to their fields..

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt is building a smart new city in the desert. It is called the New Administrative Capital. The city will use clean energy and have fast internet. Many government offices will move there to help people get better services. In the middle of the city, there is The Iconic Tower. It is the tallest tower in Africa. The new city will help reduce crowding in Cairo. It will also make life better for people by offering modern homes, schools, and hospitals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the passage is about
 a) a school b) a smart city c) a shopping mall d) a sports center
- 2 The new city has in the middle.
 a) a museum b) a train station c) the Iconic Tower d) a football field

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the new city called?
- 4 What kind of energy will the city use?
- 5 How can the city make life better for people?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 buy – cakes – We – can – bakery – the – at.

2 night – My dad – TV – at – watches.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 The restaurant closes (on) 10 pm.

2 Salma (am) sick yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 where did you go yesterday

2 My brother ali didn't play tennis

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A description of your town or city"

Where is it? – What are the most famous places there?

.....

.....

.....

Story

Billie traveled to the Everglades with her

a) horse

b) canoe

c) bike

d) car



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The Nile River gives us
a) sand b) milk c) water d) lightning
- 2 Farmers grow and wheat near the Nile River.
a) fish b) babies c) cotton d) animals
- 3 Natural gas is used to make and electricity.
a) toys b) drinks c) fuel d) paper
- 4 These resources help our country
a) reduce b) grow c) walk d) run



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Under the earth, we find precious like gold, diamond, copper, and iron.
a) water b) soil c) crops d) minerals
- 2 To means to stop trying.
a) run out b) pick out c) hang out d) give up
- 3 To get minerals, dig deep into the ground.
a) farmers b) teachers c) builders d) miners

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

Copper – dark – shiny – non-renewable

Minerals are precious materials that we find underground. Gold, diamond, copper, and iron are all mineral resources. Each one is special. Gold is soft and (1), perfect for jewelry. (2) is great for wires. Iron is strong and used to make cars and ships. Metals and minerals are (3), so we must use them wisely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

A big ship got stuck in thick, heavy mud. Other big machines rushed to help, but none of them could pull it out. A little digger on the shore said, "I can help!" The big machines laughed, but the digger started to work right away, digging carefully and clearing the mud. The path was clear, and the big ship floated free. The digger then said, "Size doesn't matter. What matters more is using your strength to help others."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A little said, "I can help!"
a) engineer b) worker c) digger d) boy
- 2 The path was clear, and the big ship free.
a) flew b) floated c) ran d) sank

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What happened to the ship?

.....

- 4 Why did the big machines laugh?

.....

- 5 What does matter more?

.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 gold – in – can – find – Egypt – Where – we?

- 2 traveling – A path – for – a route – is – or – a way.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Omar is (bad) at football than Mustafa.

- 2 Ali (never) plays football. He likes playing it.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Where are you going, nashwa

- 2 nada doesn't help mom

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Gold"

expensive mineral – hidden under the earth

.....
.....
.....

Story

What would Bille understand if she went to Everglades?

.....



Listening

4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The desert is
a) hot and dry b) cold and wet c) rainy d) snowy
- 2 Camels live in the
a) forest b) sea c) desert d) city
- 3 Lizards hide under
a) beds b) rocks c) chairs d) sand
- 4 Snakes move on the
a) road b) water c) sand d) tree



Reading

1.5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hani is so He doesn't share his toys with anyone.
a) selfish b) young c) old d) careful
- 2 are the parts of your body that help you move.
a) Legs b) Arms c) Fingers d) Muscles
- 3 In a, the temperature is dangerously high for days.
a) sandstorm b) thunderstorm c) flood d) heat wave

1.5

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floods – machines – plastic – mud

The Ancient Egyptians were clever people. They didn't have modern (1), but they found smart ways to survive. They worked hard, used simple tools, and protected themselves from heat, sand, and (2) They built their homes with thick (3) bricks.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Gold is a shiny, yellow metal. People have used gold for thousands of years. It is used to make jewelry, coins, and even in computers. Gold is found underground. People dig deep into the earth to find it. Gold does not break, and it stays beautiful for a long time. It is also very soft, so it can be shaped easily. Gold is very valuable, and many people keep it as treasure.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) earth b) gold c) jewelry d) computers
- 2 Gold can be shaped easily because it is
 a) cold b) strong c) soft d) hard

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How does gold look like?
- 4 What is gold used to make?
- 5 where do people find gold?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 games – Books – better – are – than.

- 2 the club – go – I – to – Fridays – on.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I usually get up (in) six o'clock.
- 2 I have (much) money than my friend.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 i drank some milk yesterday
- 2 magdy traveled to london last Thursday.

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My daily routine"

get up – study

.....

.....

.....

.....

Story

At night, Billie heard splashing in the water.

- a) canoes b) birds c) owls d) alligators



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Omar wakes up at am.
a) 7:00 b) 6:30 c) 8:00 d) 6:00
- 2 Omar eats a breakfast.
a) fast b) sweet c) big d) healthy
- 3 Omar to school.
a) rides b) runs c) walks d) drives
- 4 He plays with his friends.
a) games b) football c) tennis d) volleyball



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Some animals, like crocodiles, to get food.
a) play b) keep c) sail d) hunt
- 2 The sailed across the lake.
a) bus b) train c) boat d) plane
- 3 Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the
a) cottage b) barns c) bedrooms d) libraries

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

exercise – sleep – vegetables – crisps

To stay healthy, we should eat good food and get enough water. It's important to eat fruits and (1) every day. We also need to (2) for at least eight hours each night. Doing (3) helps our bodies stay strong and gives us energy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Doctors, nurses, and paramedics are real-life heroes. Doctors check patients, diagnose diseases, and provide treatments. Nurses often work around the clock to give support and care for patients. Paramedics respond quickly in emergencies. They give help on the spot and take patients safely to hospitals. Healthcare workers also help us live healthier lives, as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits. We should thank them by caring for our health and showing them respect.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 care for patients.
a) Teachers b) Nurses c) Farmers d) Engineers
- 2 Paramedics take patients safely to
a) schools b) clubs c) hospitals d) cinemas

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do doctors do?
.....
- 4 Who respond quickly in emergencies?
.....
- 5 How should we thank those heroes?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 good – for – Bananas – are – our – health.
.....
- 2 weather – Extreme – damage – and farms – can – homes.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Nada (doesn't) play games last night.
- 2 Hana was born (on) January.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Dad bought a new tablet for hani
- 2 where are you going Sara?

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The New Administrative Capital"

a smart city – the Iconic Tower

.....

.....

.....

Story

Would you like to visit the Everglades National Park? Why?

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Water is important for
a) food only b) animals only c) people only d) all living things
- 2 Farmers use water to crops.
a) carry b) cook c) grow d) find
- 3 We must water and not waste it.
a) add b) fry c) save d) boil
- 4 Water helps us stay
a) funny b) sleepy c) healthy d) tall



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Farmers like to grow crops in land.
a) dry b) rocky c) fertile d) cold
- 2 We keep milk and juice in the
a) cupboard b) fridge c) oven d) sink
- 3 A happens when there is no rain for a long time.
a) sandstorm b) thunderstorm c) flood d) drought

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

plants – river – shape – desert

I am water. You might see me in a glass, a (1), or a cloud. I can be quiet or wild. People drink me, (2) need me, and without me—life would stop. Sometimes, I help. I clean, cool, and grow things. Sometimes, I destroy. I never stop moving. I can (3) the world.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Our neighborhood has many useful places. Adel likes going to the club to play sports and video games and hang out with friends. Tamer usually goes to the supermarket with family, picking out groceries. They often go to restaurants for dinner. Adel likes the coffee shop for coffee and cake. Tamer wants to get some fresh bread from the bakery near the park. Adel always buys a few loaves when he is near there. Their bread is the best. Adel and Tamer will go there this afternoon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea in the passage is about our
a) post office b) library c) neighborhood d) mosque
- 2 They often go to restaurants for
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Adel do at the club?
.....
- 4 Where does Adel pick out groceries?
.....
- 5 When will they go to the bakery?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 always – Camels – store – bodies – their – water – in.
.....
- 2 us – Fruits – vitamins – vegetables – give – and – important.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The plane is (fast) than the car.
- 2 Nada (isn't) at the club last Friday.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 When did manal go shopping
2 what's your job Nabil?

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The heart"

a strong muscle – pump blood

.....
.....
.....
.....

Story

Billie learned to make a at the Everglades National park.

- a) table b) fire c) toy d) poster



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The heart works like a
a) door b) machine c) car d) balloon
- 2 The heart pumps through your body.
a) oil b) water c) blood d) air
- 3 Blood carries to your brain, muscles, and other organs.
a) air b) oxygen c) fire d) water
- 4 The heart keeps you alive and
a) sleepy b) angry c) healthy d) tired



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Egypt's land along the Nile is, so we can grow food.
a) fertile b) poor c) dry d) wise
- 2 To means to identify the cause of a problem or disease.
a) diagnose b) dye c) grow d) explore
- 3 Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you
a) think b) move c) breathe d) eat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

deep – searched for – sea – home

Once, there were two frogs who couldn't live in a pond any longer. So, they decided to look for a new (1) After a long time, they saw a (2) well. One of the frogs said, "This well looks like a great place for us to live!" But the other frog thought it wasn't safe. So, they (3) a better home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In Ancient Egypt, the Nile River gave water and rich soil, but weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms. To stop strong floods, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins. When droughts happened, they made irrigation systems to bring water to their fields. For sandstorms, people stayed inside to stay safe. They built homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves. They found smart ways to survive, using simple tools.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile River gave water and soil.
a) poor b) rocky c) sandy d) rich
- 2 Ancient Egyptians built homes with thick bricks.
a) paper b) steel c) mud d) wood

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What problems did the weather bring in Ancient Egypt?
.....
- 4 What did Ancient Egyptians do to stop floods?
.....
- 5 How did the irrigation systems help in droughts?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 peas – Heba – eat – to – likes – green.
.....

- 2 you – on – At the theme park, – can – rides – go.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My cousin got (good) marks than me.
- 2 We don't have (some) bread at home.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Where did Ali go last monday
2 Luxor and aswan are famous cities

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Animals in the Nile"

How do they look? – What do they eat?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Story

Who sent Billie Wind to the Everglades National Park?



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Oil and natural gas are used to make and electricity.
a) fuel b) food c) glass d) metals
- 2 The land in Delta is
a) desert b) mountain c) fertile d) snowy
- 3 Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other
a) materials b) foods c) wells d) minerals
- 4 Minerals are used to make
a) jewelry b) medicine c) paper d) clothes



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
- 2 respond quickly in emergencies.
a) Teachers b) Pilots c) Farmers d) Paramedics
- 3 Natural resources like minerals help our country
a) sleep b) play c) write d) grow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

bridges – metal – paper – cheaper

Copper is a strong (1) which we use for electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's (2) than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and (3) It's found in many places in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

People drink water when they're thirsty, bathe when they're dirty, and cry when they're hurt. Plants need water. Animals search for water, and without it, life would stop. Water helps clean, cool, and grow things. However, it can also destroy, flood, and freeze. Water never stops moving. It is always a part of something greater: clouds, oceans, and even tears. It has no shape, but it can shape the world.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) minerals b) water c) video games d) desert
- 2 To "bathe" means to have a
a) drink b) game c) meal d) shower

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When do people use water?
.....
- 4 What would happen without water?
.....
- 5 What bad things can water do?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 use – make – We – iron – to – cars.
.....
- 2 a – Diamond – rare – is – and – mineral – valuable.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She is taller (then) her brother.
- 2 Copper is (valuable) than diamond.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 do you like healthy food
2 i'm a nurse

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Natural resources"

What are natural resources? – Where can we find them?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Story

What did Billie want to become one day?

- a) A vet b) A scientist c) Elder d) An engineer



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Everyone admired the big
a) dog b) train c) ship d) plane
- 2 The little digger was always ready to
a) run b) sleep c) help d) play
- 3 The ship came close to shore to cargo.
a) eat b) load c) clean d) paint
- 4 The ship got stuck in the
a) grass b) sand c) mud d) snow



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.5

- 1 The Nile River is the most important resource in Egypt.
a) wind b) water c) sand d) oil
- 2 People gather in the to talk.
a) fire station b) school c) main square d) Nile River
- 3 My sister gets when she has too much homework.
a) stressed b) happy c) excited d) hungry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

Nile River – hunt – turtle – crocodile

Along the Nile River, the crocodile moves slowly through the water weeds. It uses the thick plants to stay hidden while it prepares to (1) The (2) is patient and waits for the perfect moment to catch its food. The (3) provides a perfect home for the crocodile, with plenty of food and shelter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My name is Omar. I live with my cousins in a big house. We often spend time together after school. We enjoy shopping for toys and snacks. On the weekend, we go to the cinema or eat at a new restaurant. My cousins love playing basketball at the club. My mother usually takes us to the zoo. I like sitting at the library to read and relax. My uncle always buys fresh fruit from the market. The apples there are amazing.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
a) family b) food c) places d) sports
- 2 I like sitting at the library to
a) sleep b) talk c) read d) study

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do Omar and his cousins do after school?
- 4 Where does his mother take them?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 for – organ – health – is – Every – important – our.
.....

- 2 thunderstorm – rain – A – can – heavy – bring.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I have (a) apples.
- 2 Asmaa (is) so excited about her trip two days ago.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 do you know what natural resources are
.....
- 2 what sport did you play last week
.....

8 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My favorite Egyptian dish"

ingredients – flavor

.....
.....
.....

Story

What did Billie not believe?

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 We live in the
 a) New Cairo b) Smart Village
 c) New Administrative Capital d) October City
- 2 It's a smart city with green areas, modern roads, and many
 a) malls b) offices c) parks d) schools
- 3 The tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, is here. It has floors.
 a) 85 b) 90 c) 80 d) 70
- 4 From the top, we can see the
 a) offices b) sky c) whole city d) tower



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We live on the third from the sun.
 a) plant b) planet c) plate d) plane
- 2 The said there would be rain.
 a) news b) thunderstorm c) flood d) Nile River
- 3 Being in a helps me make friends.
 a) supermarket b) bakery c) coffee shop d) club

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

mental health – happy – muscles – stressed

Doing exercise helps people stay fit and strong. It builds (1) and keeps the body healthy. Exercise is also great for (2) When people feel (3), playing sports or going for a walk can help them feel better and more relaxed. Staying active is good for the body and mind.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Our village is small, with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. It is full of life, and the people are very friendly. Many families live in cozy cottages. Every morning, farmers work in the fields. On Saturdays, people meet at the main square to shop. I meet my friends and play games at the community center every Thursday. Our community center is a fun place. We also visit barns where farmers keep animals like cows. At night, the village feels calm. We love our happy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Many families live in cozy
a) barns b) fields c) cottages d) towers
- 2 People shop at the main on Saturdays.
a) barn b) library c) square d) house

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When do the friends play games at the community center?
- 4 What kind of animals do farmers keep in barns?
- 5 What do you think the village feels like during the day?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 swim – weeds – the – Ducks – near – water.

- 2 was – What – weather – the – yesterday – like?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 This cake is (delicious) than that one.
- 2 Ali moved to Alexandria (on) 2020.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 crocodiles live in rivers and lakes
- 2 how did you feel during the last rainy day

8 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“Natural resources”

What are natural resources? – Why should we protect natural resources?

.....

.....

.....

Story

The turtles hid in their when danger was near.

- a) seas b) lakes c) shells d) plants



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 We find precious mineral resources like gold and copper the earth.
a) above b) next to c) behind d) under
- 2 Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to
a) break b) paint c) shape d) carry
- 3 People use gold to make coins and
a) tools b) shoes c) books d) jewelry
- 4 Diamond is more than gold.
a) cheap b) common c) valuable d) small



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 A/An can stay underwater for a long time.
a) insect b) bird c) crocodile d) lion
- 2 She is very because she exercises.
a) fat b) fit c) friendly d) funny
- 3 We can relax and drink coffee at a
a) supermarket b) bakery c) coffee shop d) school

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

trunk – truck – selfish – care for

The big tree gave us cool shade on a hot day. Its strong (1) and many branches were home to birds and squirrels. We should (2) trees because they help nature. It is (3) to cut them down without thinking about animals and people who need them. Trees are important for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My favorite Egyptian food is Koshari. It is a delicious dish made from rice, lentils, pasta, and topped with spicy tomato sauce and crispy onions. Koshari is popular in Egypt because it is filling and tasty. I love how the different ingredients mix together to create a unique flavor. It is also affordable and easy to find in many restaurants. Eating Koshari reminds me of home and family gatherings, making it very special to me.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Koshari is made from rice, lentils, pasta and spicy
a) chicken b) bread c) tomato sauce d) soup
- 2 Koshari is popular because it is good to eat and
a) salty b) tasty c) sweet d) expensive

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does the writer love about Koshari?
- 4 Where can people find Koshari easily?
- 5 Why is eating Koshari special to the writer?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 drank – milk – some – I – night – last.
- 2 us – healthy – A – meal – vitamins – gives.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Do you have (a) water?
- 2 Why didn't you (went) to school yesterday?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 blood vessels carry blood around the body
.....
- 2 is there any orange juice left in the fridge
.....

8 Write a text of about (30-40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My community"

work together – neighbors

.....

.....

.....

Story

Billie loved science and dreamed of becoming a when she grew up.

- a) driver b) scientist c) firefighter d) police officer



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Copper is a strong metal which we use to make electrical
 a) food and clothes b) toys and games
 c) wires and tools d) bottles and chairs
- 2 Copper is than gold.
 a) heavier b) cheaper c) rarer d) brighter
- 3 Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the
 a) Western Desert b) Delta
 c) Eastern Desert d) Nile Valley
- 4 Iron is used to help make cars, ships, and
 a) cakes b) tables c) bridges d) phones



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Natural resources like minerals help our country
 a) sleep b) play c) write d) grow
- 2 Egypt's deserts contain many such as gold and iron.
 a) companies b) crops c) minerals d) secrets
- 3 The queen wore a shiny gold at the ceremony.
 a) shade b) crown c) branch d) sail

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

bakery – library – theme park – restaurant

I like to visit different places on weekends. First, I go to a (1) to buy bread. Then, I eat lunch at a (2) Sometimes, I meet my friends at a club or a coffee shop. We also enjoy going to the (3) for fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Sports are a great way to stay healthy and have fun. Playing sports like football, basketball, or tennis helps improve our strength and teamwork skills. It also teaches us how to work with others. Many people enjoy watching sports because they are exciting and bring friends and families together. Sports can reduce stress and improve mental health. Whether playing or watching, sports play an important role in our lives.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) the importance of sports b) different types of sports
c) how to play sports d) famous sports
- 2 Sports help us stay
a) tired b) healthy c) bored d) sleepy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What good things do we get from playing sports?
- 4 How do sports help our mental health?
- 5 What good things do we get from playing sports?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 do – fish – like – look – What – small?

2 tall – Cairo – the – Tower – is – How?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Copper is (valuable) than diamond.

2 I don't eat fast food. I (always) eat it.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 he hits the ball with his fist

2 that was an amazing shot

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"An impossible thing"

I imagine – fantastic

.....
.....
.....

Story

The are old, wise people in a tribe.

a) elders

b) children

c) kids

d) teenagers



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 One summer, the weather became extremely
a) sunny b) cold c) hot d) windy
- 2 The pond started to
a) fill up b) dry up c) freeze d) dry out
- 3 The frogs got because there wasn't enough water.
a) happy b) worried c) tired d) angry
- 4 The frogs decided to the pond.
a) leave b) stay in c) clean d) swim in



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 I saw lightning during the
a) thunderstorm b) heat wave c) flood d) drought
- 2 are the parts of your body that help you move.
a) Heart b) Ears c) Skin d) Muscles
- 3 I was in my car during the flood. I couldn't move.
a) excited b) stuck c) signing d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

fossil fuels – sunlight – electricity – minerals

The Earth gives us many resources. Plants grow best when they have good soil, water, and (1) People rely on (2) like coal and oil to produce energy. We also use (3) from the ground to make important things, like metal tools and machines.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In the Nile River, small colorful fish eat water weeds. Birds feed on small fish, insects, and river plants. Big fish eat smaller fish, insects, and tiny water creatures. Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes larger animals. Huge crocodiles are scary, and no animals really hunt them—they are the kings of the Nile. All animals find food to survive. We must protect the river and its life because each animal plays an important role.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about _____.
a) Nile Delta b) Nile River c) Lake d) Desert
- 2 Crocodiles are called the kings of the Nile because _____.
a) they eat water weeds b) they swim fast
c) no animals hunt them d) they are small

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do crocodiles eat? _____
- 4 What do big fish eat? _____
- 5 Why should we protect the Nile and its animals? _____



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 grandparents – visit – always – their – They.

2 desert – animals – in – live – the – What?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Hussien (study) English yesterday.

2 My bag is (heavy) than yours.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 The Nile River gives egypt fertile land _____

2 i usually visit my grandma on wednesday. _____

8 Write a text of about (30 - 40) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A healthy body"

What foods should we eat to stay healthy? – What exercises or sports do you like to do?

.....

.....

.....

Story

"Everything in nature was connected, and if people did not take care of it, the balance would be broken."

Name two things that people can do to take care of nature.

.....



Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 The desert is (cold – rainy – hot – windy) and dry.
- 2 Snakes often eat small animals, like (rats – ants – birds – cats).
- 3 Camels eat (meat – insects – plants – sand) to stay strong.

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

selfish – care for – shade – branch

Afnan : This tree gives great (1) _____. Let's rest here.

Asmaa : Look at that bird on the (2) _____ !

Afnan : So cute! We should (3) _____ trees and animals.

Asmaa : Yes, but some people are (4) _____ and cut trees down.

Afnan : That's sad. We need to protect nature.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Extreme weather events like floods, big storms, and heatwaves can cause serious problems. They damage homes, roads, and farms. People may lose power or clean water. Some must leave their homes for safety. These events can also harm animals and the environment. We must learn how to stay safe and protect nature during these times.

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about extreme (village – weather – noise – food) and what it does.
- 2 People may lose (tower – power – flower – shower) or clean water during extreme weather events.
- 3 Some people have to (clean – leave – paint – fix) their homes for safety.

B Answer the following questions:

- 4 How can extreme weather affect people's homes?
.....
- 5 What are some examples of extreme weather?
.....



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 Farmers need (drought – dry – fertile – ugly) soil to produce enough food for everyone.
- 2 Water and sunlight are (non-renewable – electricity – waste – natural resources).
- 3 Children like to play sports at the (bakery – club – restaurant – supermarket).
- 4 The book is (more – many – much – most) interesting than the movie.
- 5 I always go to the park (in – on – at – for) the afternoons.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

- 1 rats – like – or lizards – often eat – small – Snakes – animals.
.....
- 2 the – Egyptians – lived – Ancient – Nile River – near.
.....
- 3 a – made – She – crown – flowers – from.
.....
- 4 makes – Swimming – lungs – your – strong.
.....
- 5 cake – She – delicious – a – baked – yesterday.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 Tom made crowns from (apples – flowers – leaves – branches).
- 2 Tom loved a big, strong (apple tree – flower – mango tree – pineapple).
- 3 Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or (nails – needs – bees – pins).

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

lungs – mental health – organ – stressed

Hamza : You look tired, Malek. Are you okay?

Malek : I feel a bit (1) I have too much homework.

Hamza : You should take care of your (2) Rest and breathe deeply.

Malek : That's true. Breathing helps my (3) work better, too.

Hamza : Yes! The lungs are an important (4)

Malek : Thanks, Hamza. I'll try to relax.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Mineral resources like gold, iron, and copper are found under the earth. People use these minerals to make things we need every day, such as buildings and cars. Some minerals, like diamonds, are shiny and used to make jewelry. Others, like copper, help electricity flow. These resources are very important, but they take a long time to form, so we must use them wisely. Recycling and preserving nature help protect our mineral resources for the future!

A Choose the correct answer from:

- 1 Diamonds are shiny and used in (electricity – pencils – jewelry – buildings).
- 2 The underlined pronoun “them” refers to (mineral resources – buildings – cars – devices).
- 3 We can protect mineral resources by (recycling – polluting – drawing – damaging) and preserving nature

B Answer the following questions:

- 4 How do people use mineral resources in daily life?
.....
- 5 Why should we use mineral resources wisely?
.....



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 We stayed in the (summer – shade – heatwave – storm) to avoid the hot sunshine.
- 2 A (kind – helpful – selfish – friendly) person doesn't care about others.
- 3 A (thunderstorm – storm – rainbow – calm night) has loud thunder and bright lightning.
- 4 They (goes – going – went – go) to the park last weekend.
- 5 She is a (good – better – best – more good) player than her sister.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

- 1 queen's – shiny – had – The – jewels – crown – .
.....
- 2 in – happen – places – very – Droughts – hot – .
.....
- 3 did – yesterday – do – What – you – ?
.....
- 4 much – Too – stress – your heart – can hurt.
.....
- 5 passed – Tom – and – years – back – home – came.
.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 The tree's leaves were (brown – bent – dry – belt).
- 2 Tom realized that he had been (kind – selfish – happy – careless).
- 3 Tom started to (cut – ignore – care for – break) the tree.

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

football – vitamins – bodies – soda

Sarah : Do you know that (1) _____ help keep our bodies healthy?

Omar : Yes! But I still like drinking (2) _____ after football practice.

Sarah : Soda isn't good for our (3) _____. Vitamins from fruits are much better!

Omar : You're right. I should eat more fruits to stay strong for (4) _____.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

To conserve water, turn off the tap while brushing your teeth. Fix leaks quickly to stop wasting water. Use a water pot when washing your car instead of a hose. Water plants early in the morning or late in the evening to stop water from drying too fast. These small actions save a lot of water.

A Choose the correct answer from:

- 1 The underlined word "conserve" means (waste – protect – save – play).
- 2 Watering plants early in the (morning – afternoon – night – midnight) helps stop water from drying too fast.
- 3 Using a (hose – water pot – sponge – brush) to wash your car saves water.

B Answer the following questions:

4 How can you save water when washing your hands?

.....

5 What happens if we waste too much water?

.....



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

1 People wore masks during the (flood – thunderstorm – heatwave – sandstorm).

2 The door was (stuck – soft – light – easy) and wouldn't open.

3 There is (some – any – a – an) milk in the fridge.

4 Where did they (go – went – going – were) yesterday?

5 Natural resources like minerals help our country (sleep – play – write – grow).

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

1 always – Camels – store – bodies – in their – water.

.....

2 absent – He – school – yesterday – wasn't – at.

.....

3 subject – your – What – favorite – last year – was –?

.....

4 come – you – want – to – with – Do – me?

.....

5 square – The – busiest – main – the – place – is.

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 In the past, Adam didn't (sleep – eat – exercise – study) much.
- 2 Now, Adam wakes up (late – early – bad – sad) on weekends.
- 3 Adam feels (tired – strong and happy – bored – sleepy) when he exercises every morning.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

wildfire – heat wave – flood – sandstorm

Rana : The weather is scary these days. Did you hear about the (1) _____ in the south?

Omar : Yes! So much rain in one day. Last month, a (2) _____ burned many trees near the village.

Rana : And my cousin saw a (3) _____ while driving in the desert!

Omar : I remember the (4) _____ last summer. It was too hot to go outside!



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Lily was a kind girl. One day, she saw the clouds in the sky were upside down. She was worried because her flowers needed sunlight. She opened the window and whispered, "Please turn over, clouds!" The clouds listened and turned the right way. The sun came out, and the flowers were happy. Lily smiled. She learned that kindness can fix problems.

A Choose the correct answer from:

- 1 The clouds were (big and loud – dark and rainy – upside down – near the ground) in the sky.
- 2 Lily wanted the sun to shine for her (cat – flowers – school – toys).
- 3 Lily used a (shout – phone – whisper – stick) to fix the problem.

B Answer the following questions:

- 4 Why was Lily worried?

.....

- 5 What happened after Lily whispered to the clouds?

.....



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 She bought (a – an – some – any) bottle of water.
- 2 To be fit means to be healthy and (tired – active – smart – nervous).
- 3 (Heart – Ears – Skin – Muscles) are the parts of your body that help you move.
- 4 We can go on rides at a (school – restaurant – theme park – coffee shop).
- 5 Amira is (tall – taller – tallest – more tal) than her friends.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

- 1 water – a – The – had – theme park – slide – .

.....

- 2 lives – cozy – in – Grandma – cottage – a – .

.....

- 3 took – main – photos – We – in the – square – .

.....

- 4 at – They – o'clock – eat – eight – dinner.

.....

- 5 fall – is – The winter – than – colder – the.

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

- 1 Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming (boring – possible – difficult – easy).
- 2 The Nile River gave (water and rich soil – sand and dust – cold air – strong wind).
- 3 The weather brought problems like floods, droughts, and (sandstorms – snow and ice – earthquakes – tornadoes).

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

leap – safely – enjoy – insect

Tom : Look at that (1) _____ flying near the flowers!

Sarah : Yes, it flies very fast. I think it's a bee.

Tom : Wow, it can (2) _____ from flower to flower quickly.

Sarah : We should watch it (3) _____ so we don't scare it away.

Tom : Good idea! Let's be quiet and (4) _____ watching the insect.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

7.5

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal. It has rice, pasta, lentils, chickpeas, and crispy onions. People add red sauce and spicy Dakka sauce. First, you cook the rice and pasta. Then, boil the lentils. Fry garlic and onions. Put everything in one bowl. It is a mix of many simple foods. Koshari is very popular in Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from:

- 1 Koshari is a (French – Italian – Egyptian – Russian) meal.
- 2 People eat Koshari in a (cup – bag – bowl – box).
- 3 Dakka is a type of (bread – sauce – meat – chicken).

B Answer the following questions:

4 What are the main ingredients of Koshari?

.....

5 Why do people like Koshari?

.....



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 Mental health is how you feel and (think – run – jump – drink).
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians found smart ways to (damage – breathe – grow – survive).
- 3 Lungs are the organs in your chest that help you (think – move – breathe – eat).
- 4 Omar will buy (a – some – any – an) apples for the picnic.
- 5 She didn't (sleep – slept – sleeping – sleeps) yesterday.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

5

- 1 use – to – fuel – Cars – move – fossil.
.....
- 2 studied – class – science – minerals – We – in.
.....
- 3 stress – breaks – at – reduces – Taking – school.
.....
- 4 save – How – we – can – resources – non-renewable?
.....
- 5 life – Without – water – stop – would.
.....

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

Crocodiles eat fish, birds, and sometimes large animals near the water. They are strong and scary, and few animals hunt them—they are the kings of the Nile. All animals in the river find food to survive. Each one plays an important role, so we must protect the river and its life.

Practice on Lesson 3

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom. He had a big apple tree in his garden. Tom played under the tree and ate its apples. He didn't give the tree food or water. Years later, Tom came back and the tree became weak. Tom felt sorry and started to care for the tree. He gave it water and love. The tree became strong again.

Test Yourself 1

Tom had a healthy apple tree. The tree gave Tom apples and Tom played on it. Tom traveled away and when he came back, the tree was weak. Tom knew that he was selfish. So, he decided to take care of the tree. The tree grew strong again.

Test Yourself 2

Ahmed and Laila are at the Nile River. They see small colorful fish. Laila says small fish eat water plants. Birds eat fish and insects. Big fish eat smaller fish. Crocodiles eat many animals. Ahmed thinks crocodiles are scary. Laila says they are the kings of the Nile.

Al-Azhar Corner

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes eat small animals like rats or lizards. Camels eat plants to stay strong. Lizards eat insects for energy. Some animals hide under rocks to stay cool. Others, like owls, come out at night when it's cooler.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Ahmed is a big fan of playing sports. Football strengthens his heart and muscles. Swimming helps his lungs work better. He eats fruit before exercise for energy. Sports make his body fit and bones strong. He exercises regularly in the morning. He sometimes walks to school to stay active.

Practice on Lesson 3

Ali's teacher said the heart is very important. It is as big as a fist. The heart pumps blood to the whole body. Blood carries good things like oxygen. It takes away bad things like carbon dioxide. Ali will eat good food and play football to keep his heart strong. A strong heart keeps us alive.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

Ali has good habits now. He wakes up early. He eats healthy food. He plays football. Doctor Ahmed says these habits help his heart. Nurses work hard to help sick people. Ali thanks all healthcare workers. They teach us good habits. Ali will keep his healthy habits. They make him strong.

Test Yourself 1

My name is Habiba and I changed my lifestyle to be healthy. In the past, I loved chips and burgers. Now, I eat more fruit and vegetables for vitamins. I used to drink soda. Now, I drink a lot of water to stay fresh. All these changes make me feel better.

Test Yourself 2

Omar wants to be a doctor when he grows up. Doctors work in hospitals. They help patients by diagnosing illnesses and providing treatments. Doctors help us live healthier lives as they encourage us to eat healthy meals, stay active, play sports, and stop harmful habits.

Al-Azhar Corner

This is my friend Hassan. He is a paramedic and he works in a hospital. He responds in emergencies and gives help on the spot.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Last week, there was a terrible flood in our town. Water covered the streets and cars got stuck. My uncle's house was damaged. Now, there is a drought. There's no rain. The farmers can't grow food and the animals can't find water.

Test Yourself 1

Once upon a time, in a small and quiet village, there were two frogs who were best friends. They lived together in a small pond near the edge of the village.

The pond was their home, and they loved it very much. Every day, they had fun catching flies, swimming in the cool water, and resting under the warm sun.

Test Yourself 2

The Nile River flooded every year. The water brought rich soil to the land, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the floods were too strong and damaged farms. To stop this, the Ancient Egyptians built canals and basins to control the water and spread it over their fields.

Al-Azhar Corner

Sandstorms, called Khamasin, brings strong, hot winds with sand. It is hard to see and breathe. People stay inside to stay safe. They build their homes with thick mud bricks to protect themselves from the wind and sand.

UNIT 4

Practice Lesson 1

Tamer and Adel talk about the places they visit in their neighborhood. Adel likes going to the club, while Tamer enjoys going to the supermarket with his family. They also go to restaurants and coffee shops. Later, Tamer suggests going to the bakery near the park. Adel agrees because he loves their fresh bread.

Test Yourself 1

Farmers keep animals like cows, sheep, and chickens in the barns. I visit my uncle's barn to help feed the animals. The community center is a fun place. I meet my friends and play games there every Thursday.

At night, the village is quiet. I walk near the fields and look at the stars. I love my village. It is a happy place to live.

Test Yourself 2

I live in a small village with green fields, tall trees, and quiet hills. The people are friendly, and the village is full of life. My family and I live in a cozy cottage near the community center.

Al-Azhar Corner

My family and I live in a cozy cottage near the community center. Every morning, I hear birds singing and see farmers working in the fields. The air is fresh, and everything feels calm.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

There are two types of natural resources. Sunlight, water and wind are renewable resources. Minerals, oil, and natural gas are non-renewable resources. We must use non-renewable energy resources wisely. We can find all natural resources in nature.

Practice on Lesson 3

Once upon a time, there was a little digger who lived on the shore. It was not so big or popular, but it was always helpful. One morning, a huge big ship got stuck in the thick mud. Big machines couldn't help. The little digger worked hard and cleared the path for the ship.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

Water is the most important natural resource in the world. Without water, all living things would die. You can see it in rivers, lakes, seas, and oceans. Water help plants grow. People drink it when they are thirsty. They use it for drinking, cooking, and farming.

Test Yourself 1

I'm gold. I sleep deep under the earth, hidden and quiet. People search for me, dream about me, and admire me. I sit in the crowns of kings and the rings of queens. I am soft and beautiful. I am treasured because I am valuable.

Test Yourself 2

Ali sat near the river with his dog, Max. The water moved quietly. Birds flew over the lake. People came to drink, bathe, and rest. Water was everywhere—clouds, rain, and even in sweat. Sometimes, it helped plants grow. Other times, it flooded the town. Max barked happily as Ali smiled. Water had no shape, but it shaped everything.

Al-Azhar Corner

This is my uncle Omar. He is an engineer and he works for an oil company. They use oil and natural gas to make fuel.

Final Tests Tapescript

Test 1

Many animals and plants live in the Nile River. You can find big animals like crocodiles swimming in the water. There are also small insects near the plants on the riverbank. Fish, birds, and green plants make the Nile a beautiful place full of life.

Test 2

To take care of your health, do some sports like football. Football helps your muscles and makes you strong. Exercise increases energy and improves mental health. Exercise also reduces stress. When you play a sport, you feel happy. Sleep well every night to stay healthy and be ready for the next day.

Test 3

Sometimes, the weather can be very strong. A thunderstorm brings loud sounds and heavy rain. A sandstorm blows sand everywhere. A flood happens when there is too much water. A drought is when there is no rain for a long time. A wildfire is a big fire that burns trees and grass.

Test 4

There are many places in our neighborhood. We buy food from the supermarket. Children play in the park. People read books at the library. My parents drink coffee at the coffee shop. On weekends, we go to the bakery to buy bread. I love all the places in my neighborhood.

Test 5

Egypt has many important natural resources. The Nile River gives us water. Farmers grow cotton and wheat near the river. Egypt also has natural gas, which is used to make fuel and electricity. These resources help our country grow. The Nile and natural gas are two of Egypt's most valuable resources.

Test 6

Some animals live in the desert. The desert is hot and dry. Camels live there. They eat plants to stay strong. Lizards hide under rocks. Snakes move on the sand. Foxes and owls come out at night. These animals can live in hot places.

Test 7

Omar wakes up early at 6:30 am. He brushes his teeth and eats a healthy breakfast. At 7:15, he walks to school. After school, he finishes his homework and helps his mother set the table. In the evening, he plays football with his friends. At night, he has dinner with his family and goes to bed at 9 o'clock.

Test 8

Water is very important for all living things. People need water to drink, cook, and clean. Farmers need water to grow crops like wheat and rice. Animals also need water to live. We must save water and not waste it. Clean water helps us stay healthy and keeps our world safe and green.

Test 9

The heart is a very important organ in your body. It works like a machine. It beats all day and night to pump blood through your body. This blood carries oxygen to your brain, muscles, and other organs. The heart keeps you alive and healthy. So, take good care of it!

Test 10

Oil and natural gas are used to make fuel and electricity. We grow cotton, wheat, and many kinds of fruit. The land in the Delta region and along the Nile is fertile. It helps us grow food. Egypt's deserts contain gold, iron, and other minerals as well. They're used to make jewelry, build buildings, and help our country grow.

Test 11

Everyone admired the big ship. It was huge and proud as it sailed across the ocean. I was just a little digger on the shore—not big, not popular—but always ready to help. One morning, I watched the big ship come close to shore to load some cargo. But then, something went wrong. It got too close and got stuck in the thick, heavy mud.

Test 12

We live in the New Administrative Capital, east of Cairo. It's a smart city with green areas, modern roads, and many offices. The tallest building in Africa, the Iconic Tower, is here. It has 80 floors. From the top, we can see the whole city. Life here is peaceful.

Test 13

Under the earth, we find precious mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is soft, shiny, and easy to shape. People use it for coins and jewelry. I love gold rings! Diamond is a rare mineral—even more valuable than gold!

Test 14

Copper is a strong metal which we use electrical wires, pipes, and tools. It's cheaper than gold. Egypt gets most of its copper and gold from the Eastern Desert. Iron is super strong. It helps make cars, ships, airplanes, and bridges. It's found in many places in Egypt.

Test 15

One summer, the weather became extremely hot. The sun was strong, and the pond started to dry up. The frogs got worried. They knew they couldn't stay in the pond any longer because there wasn't enough water for them. They decided to leave the pond and look for a new home where they could live safely.

Al-Azhar Tests

Test 1

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals, like rats or lizards. Camels live in the desert, too. They eat plants to stay strong.

Test 2

Once upon a time, there was a boy named Tom who loved a big, strong apple tree in his garden. Tom used the tree for everything. He made crowns from its leaves and ate its delicious apples. He rested in its shade and climbed its trunk with his friends. But Tom never thought about the tree's feelings or needs.

Test 3

The tree looked sad. Its leaves bent, and its branches were weak. When Tom saw the tree, he realized that he had been selfish. Tom started to care for the tree, watering it, and protecting it from the sun. Slowly, the tree began to become better.

Test 4

Hello! I'm Adam, and I'd like to share how my habits have changed. In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning—it makes me feel strong and happy.

Test 5

Ancient Egypt had weather that made farming possible, even in the desert. The Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow. But sometimes, the weather also brought problems like floods, droughts, and sandstorms.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Practice on Lesson 2

"Animals in the desert"

The desert is hot and dry, but many animals live there. Snakes often eat small animals like rats or lizards. Others, like owls, come out at night when it is cooler.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"How to make your favorite food"

Koshari is my favorite recipe to make. First, cook rice in a pot and pasta in another pot. Then, put the rice in a bowl and add the pasta and lentils on top. After that, pour the red sauce all over it. It's yummy.

Unit 1 Test Yourself 1

"My favorite Egyptian food"

Koshari is a tasty Egyptian meal with many simple ingredients in one bowl. First, you need to cook rice, pasta, and lentils in different pots. For the red sauce, fry some chopped garlic in oil, add tomato sauce, vinegar, and some spices.

Unit 1 Test Yourself 2

"The Nile River"

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It flows through many countries. It is home to fish, crocodiles, and birds. People use it for water, farming, and transport.

UNIT 2 Practice on Lesson 2

"My healthy habits"

I'm Adam and I'd like to share my healthy habits with you. I wake up early and exercise every morning. When I exercise regularly, I feel better. I go for a walk with my family after dinner.

Practice on Lesson 3

"How good habits protect your heart"

Good food, exercise daily, and rest help your body. These habits protect your heart and mind. When you move, eat well, and sleep enough, you stay strong and feel better every day.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"My friend the pharmacist"

My friend works as a pharmacist. She works in a pharmacy and gives people the medicine they need. She wears a white coat at work. She helps sick people feel better by giving the right medicine.

Unit 2 Test Yourself 1

"My journey to a healthier life"

In the past, I woke up late on weekends and didn't exercise much. Now, I wake up early and exercise every morning. All these changes make me feel strong and happy.

Unit 2 Test Yourself 2

"Healthcare workers"

Healthcare workers—like doctors, nurses, pharmacists, and paramedics, are real-life heroes who spend their lives helping people every day. They work day and night to keep people healthy and treat illnesses.

UNIT 3 Practice on Lesson 1

"Weather problems"

Sometimes, the weather causes big problems. When it rains too much, a flood can happen. Water covers the streets and houses. Many things get damaged. But sometimes, there is no rain at all. This is called a drought.

Practice on Lesson 2

"The weather in Ancient Egypt"

In Ancient Egypt, the Nile River gave water and rich soil, which helped crops grow. Droughts happened when there was not enough rain. When there was a strong sandstorm with hot winds, people stayed inside their homes.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"A fiction story"

Title : The Lost Puppy

Beginning : Laila was walking in the park, when she found a small puppy.

Problem : It looked hungry and scared.

Middle : Laila took the puppy home, gave it food, and made a small bed. She made posters and asked around the neighborhood.

Climax : After three days, a little boy saw the poster and ran to Laila's house.

Ending : Laila gave him the puppy, but she was sad to say goodbye to it.

Unit 3 Test Yourself 1

"The weather in Egypt"

In Egypt, summer is very hot. The sun shines all day. People wear light clothes and drink cold water. Some people go to the beach or stay indoors and avoid going outdoors.

Unit 3 Test Yourself 2

"A Trip to the Moon"

I traveled to the moon in a big rocket. I saw stars, planets, and space dust. The moon was quiet and gray. I saw the planet Earth from space. It was amazing!

UNIT 4 Practice on Lesson 1

"Places in our community"

There are many places in our community. We eat lunch at the restaurant. We play games at the club. The bakery smells nice, and we buy fresh bread there. I love our town!

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"My city"

My city is Cairo. It is in Egypt. It is great because it has the Nile River and many old buildings. The pyramids are special. Tourists love to visit my city because people are very friendly here.

Unit 4 Test Yourself 1

"Egypt's new city"

The New Administrative Capital is a smart city east of Cairo that reduces crowding. It has green areas, government offices, the Iconic Tower, and a new airport. People find great jobs and a peaceful life there.

Unit 4 Test Yourself 2

"A day at the theme park"

I went to the theme park with my family. I rode the roller coaster and played games. We ate popcorn, ice cream, and pizza. It was a fun and exciting day!

UNIT 5 Practice on Lesson 2

"Minerals in our world"

Under the earth, we find mineral resources like gold, diamond, copper, and iron. These are used every day to make important things. Gold is shiny. People use it for coins and jewelry.

Practice on Lesson 3

"The story of the Little Digger"

One morning a big famous ship sailed in the sea but it got stuck in heavy mud near the shore. The little digger worked hard to clear the path for the ship. The story teaches us that size doesn't matter.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"I am copper"

I am a strong metal. People use me to make electric wires. I help lights and machines work. You can find me in the Eastern Desert. I am important for the world!

Unit 5 Test Yourself 1

"I am iron"

I am iron. I am super strong and hard. I come from rocks deep under the earth. Miners dig me out. I make tools, cars, and bridges. I am useful. I do not break easily. I help people every day.

Unit 5 Test Yourself 2

"Treasures of Egypt"

Egypt is full of treasures. The Nile River gives us water and rich soil. We have natural resources like gold, gas, and oil. These give us fuel and electricity. Egypt's land and river help people live better lives.

كراسة تسميع الكلمات

Dictation Copybook



Unit 1

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	أعشاب مائية	.....	يحمي
.....	يصطاد	.....	حشرات
.....	دور	.....	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
.....	تمساح	.....	حياة
.....	مخيف	.....	حيوانات
.....	مخلوقات	.....	صغير الحجم

Lesson 2

.....	جمل	.....	طاقة
.....	سحالي	.....	ثعابين
.....	جاف	.....	أكثر برودة
.....	منتعش	.....	التوازن
.....	صحراء	.....	بوم (جمع بومة)

Lesson 3

.....	جذع الشجرة	.....	تاج
.....	حديقة	.....	أوراق الشجر
.....	مشاعر	.....	ظل
.....	فروع/أغصان	.....	أناني
.....	احتياجات	.....	لذيذ
.....	ضعيف	.....	أصدقاء

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	كشري	.....	وجبة مصرية
.....	نكهة/ طعم	.....	ثوم
.....	مكونات/مقادير	.....	وعاء / طبق
.....	وصفة	.....	بسيط
.....	تقليدي	.....	توابل
.....	حمص	.....	مكرونه

Unit 2

DICTATION



Lesson 1

الرياضة	قلب
كرة القدم	لائق بدنيًا
عضلات	رئتان
سباحة	تمرين
متعب	متوتر
الصحة العقلية	طاقة

Lesson 2

عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	رحلة
برجر	عادات
وجبات خفيفة	فيتامينات
رقائق البطاطس (الشيبسي)	حلويات

Lesson 3

أعضاء	أكسجين
عناصر غذائية	أوعية دموية
يضخ	قبضة اليد
ثاني أكسيد الكربون	فضلات
أنابيب	خلية

Lessons 4 and 5

صيانة	رعاية صحية
مسعفون	يشخص
مهارات	أبطال
مرضى	أمراض
حقيقي	دعم
دواء	علاج
حالات طوارئ	ضار

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	عاصفة رعدية	.....	فيضان
.....	جفاف	.....	موجة حارة
.....	عاصفة رملية	.....	طقس
.....	حرائق الغابات	.....	برق
.....	درجة الحرارة	.....	تراب
.....	تالف / متضرر	.....	محاصيل
.....	كوكب	.....	جبال

Lesson 2

.....	تربة خصبة/غنية	.....	مصر القديمة
.....	أحواض	.....	أمطار كافية
.....	الطوب اللبن	.....	سميك
.....	قنوات مائية	.....	الزراعة
.....	حديث/معاصر	.....	منخفض
.....	ممکن/مستطاع	.....	رياح الخماسين

Lesson 3

.....	بركة / مستنقع	.....	ذباب
.....	يقفز	.....	ضفدع
.....	محشور	.....	بئر
.....	الطقس	.....	بأمان
.....	جناح	.....	تحرك / حركة
.....	حافة	.....	حفرة
.....	خطر	.....	عميق

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	مريح	.....	مخيلة / تخيلات
.....	منفوش / رقيق	.....	همسة
.....	بطريقة سحرية	.....	العطف / الطيبة
.....	لطيف / رقيق	.....	مرح / سعادة
.....	مشاكل	.....	عزيزي / عزيزتي
.....	ينقلب	.....	يصفق

Unit 4

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	مطعم	.....	نادي
.....	سوبرماركت	.....	مخبز
.....	مقهى	.....	حديقة ملاهي
.....	طازج	.....	حي سكني
.....	شخصيا	.....	مريح
.....	أرغفة الخبز	.....	بقالة

Lesson 2

.....	قرية	.....	حقول
.....	مركز مجتمعي	.....	كوخ
.....	حظائر	.....	الساحة الرئيسية
.....	هادئ	.....	ودود
.....	غنم	.....	تلال
.....	منعش / طازج	.....	هواء

Lesson 3

.....	كوبري	.....	ثلاجة
.....	صح	.....	مباراة/ عود كبريت
.....	رحلة طيران	.....	ساحرة
.....	لامع	.....	ساعة يد

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	إداري	.....	ازدحام
.....	حكومي	.....	عاصمة
.....	البرج الأيقوني	.....	ذكي / متطور
.....	مباني	.....	مكاتب
.....	تكنولوجيا	.....	صلب / فولاذ
.....	أدوار / طوابق	.....	مطار

Unit 5

DICTATION



Lesson 1

موارد طبيعية	ضوء الشمس
تربة	معادن
رياح	خصبة
وقود أحفوري	ماء
كهرباء	غاز طبيعي
طبيعة	زراعة
حديد	نهر النيل

Lesson 2

معدن	ألماس
نحاس	أدوات
نادر	عملات معدنية
موارد معدنية	مجوهرات
أسلاك	عمال مناجم
طائرات	غير متجدد
لامع	ثمين

Lesson 3

يشحن / يحمل	حفار
يستسلم	سميك
طريق	بضائع
طين	فخور
قوة	آلات

Lessons 4 and 5

يستحم	دمعة
عرق	يدمر
قذر	سحابة
المحيطات	عطشان
شكل	متألم